A



SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE

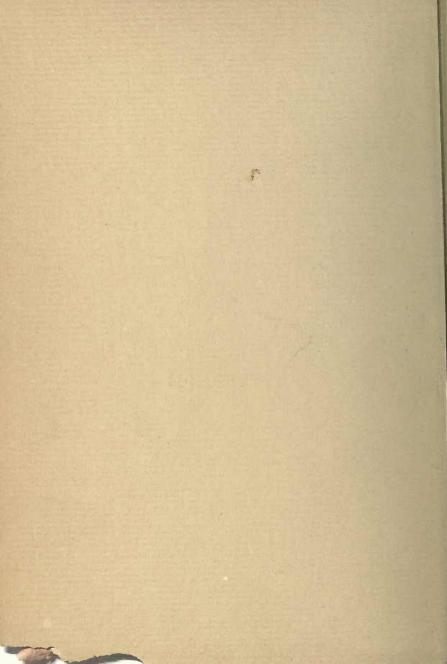
UJARĀTĪ LANGUAGE

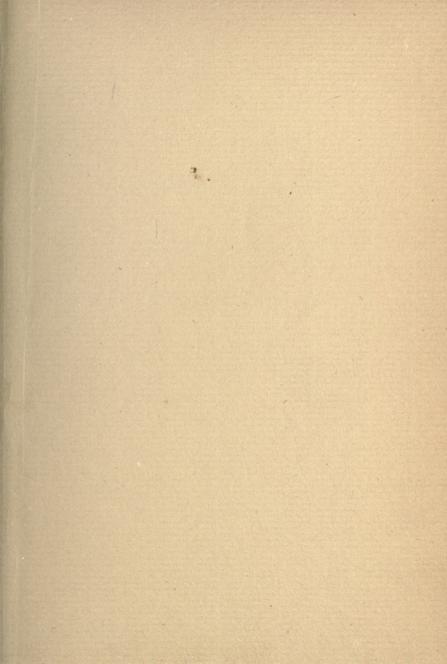
AND VOCABULARY

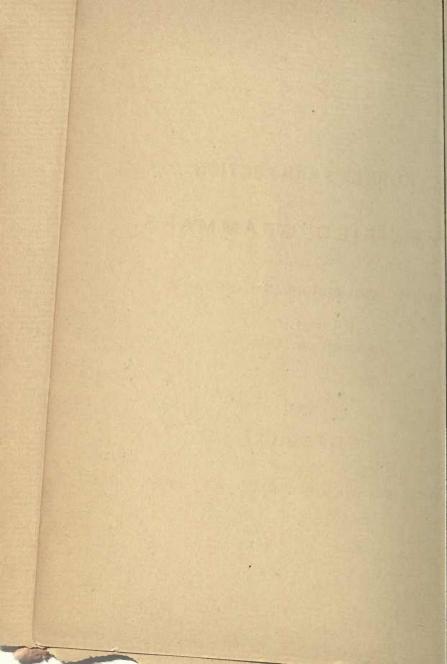
REV. WM. ST CLAIR TISDALL M.A., C.M.S.

lifornia onal ity

D. B. TARAPOREVALA, SONS, & CO. BOMBAY







TRÜBNER'S COLLECTION

OF

SIMPLIFIED GRAMMARS

OF THE PRINCIPAL

ASIATIC AND EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

EDITED BY

REINHOLD ROST, LL.D., PH.D.

XXII.

GUJARĀTĪ.

BY THE

REV. WM. ST. CLAIR TISDALL, M.A., C.M.S.

TRÜBNER'S COLLECTION OF SIMPLIFIED GRAMMARS OF THE PRINCIPAL ASIATIC AND EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

EDITED BY REINHOLD ROST, LL.D., Ph.D.

- I. HINDUSTANI, PERSIAN AND ARABIC. BY THE LATE E. H. PALMER, M.A. Second Edition. Price 5s.
- II. HUNGARIAN. By I. SINGER. Price 4s. 6d.
- III. BASQUE. By W. VAN EYS. Price 3s. 6d.
- IV. MALAGASY. By G. W. PARKER. Price 5s.
- V. MODERN GREEK. By E. M. GELDART, M.A. Price 2s. 6d.
- VI. ROUMANIAN. BY R. TORCEANU. Price 5s.
- VII. TIBETAN. By H. A. JASCHKE. Price 5s.
- VIII. DANISH. By E. C. OTTÉ. Price 2s. 6d.
 - IX. OTTOMAN TURKISH. By J. W. REDHOUSE. Price 10s. 6d.
 - X. SWEDISH. By E. C. OTTÉ. Price 2s. 6d.
 - XI. POLISH. By W. R. MORFILL, M.A. Price 3s. 6d.
- XII. PALI. BY EDWARD MÜLLER, LL.D. Price 7s. 6d.
- XIII. SANSKRIT. BY HJALMAR EDGREN, PH.D. Price 10s. 6d.
- XIV. ALBANIAN. By P. W. Price 7s. 6d.
- XV. JAPANESE. By B. H. CHAMBERLAIN. Price 5s.
- XVI. SERBIAN. By W. R. Morfill, M.A. Price 4s. 6d.
- XVII. LANGUAGES OF THE CUNEIFORM INSCRIPTIONS. BY GEORGE BERTIN, M.R.A.S. Price 5s.
- XVIII. PANJĀBĪ. BY THE REV. WM. ST. CLAIR TISDALL, M.A. Price 7s. 6d.
 - XIX. SPANISH. By W. F. HARVEY, M.A. Price 3s. 6d.
 - XX. TELUGU. BY HENRY MORRIS, F.R.G.S. Price 10s. 6d.
 - XXI. KHASSI. By H. ROBERTS. Price 10s. 6d.
- XXII. GUJARĀTĪ. BY THE REV. WM. ST. CLAIR TISDALL, M.A.

Grammars of the following are in preparation:-

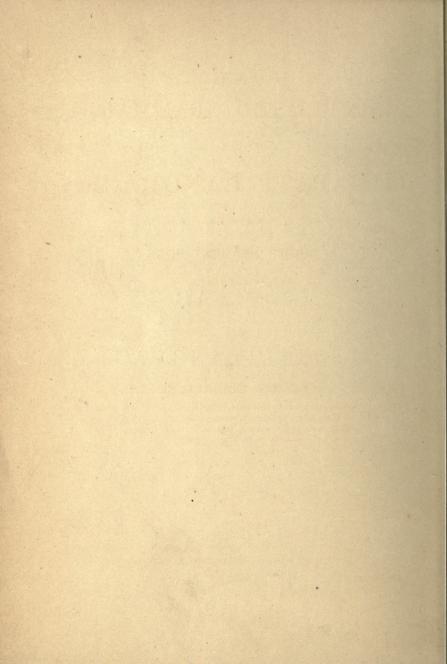
Anglo-Saxon, Assyrian, Bohemian, Bulgarian, Burmese, Chinese, Cymric and Gaelic, Dutch, Egyptian, Finnish, Hebrew, Kurdish, Malay, Russian, Siamese, Singhalese, &c. &c.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

GUJARĀTĪ LANGUAGE.



SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR

OF THE

GUJARĀTĪ LANGUAGE,

TOGETHER WITH

A SHORT READING BOOK

AND VOCABULARY.

BY THE

REV. WM. ST. CLAIR TISDALL, M.A., C.M.S.,

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL TRAINING COLLEGE, AMRITSAR; LATELY MISSIONARY IN CHARGE C.M.S. MUHAMMADAN MISSION, BOMBAY; AUTHOR OF "A SIMPLIFIED GRAMMAR OF THE PANJÄRÍ LANGUAGE"; "THE TRIGLOTT GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN;" ETC.

LONDON:

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO. Ltd.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD.
1892

TO

THE MEMBERS

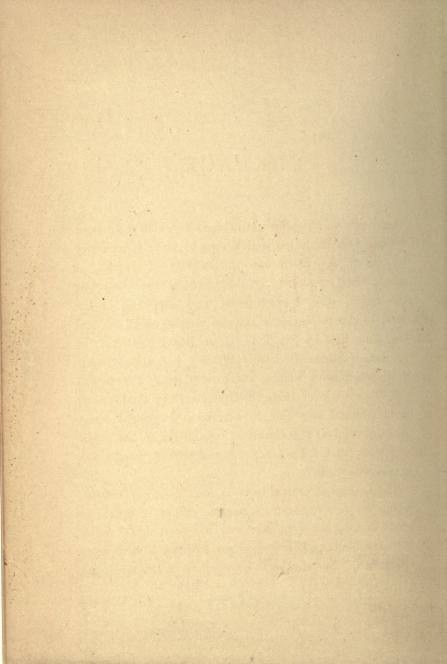
OF THE

IRISH PRESBYTERIAN MISSION, GUJARAT,

WHO HAVE DONE SO MUCH FOR

GUJARĀTĪ LITERATURE,

THIS LITTLE VOLUME IS, WITHOUT THEIR KNOWLEDGE, DEDICATED.



PREFACE.

THE Series of Simplified Grammars to which the present volume belongs is too well known to make it necessary for me to say much now in the way of preface. I must, however, record my obligations to two vernacular Grammars,—the necessary of the Rev. J. van S. Taylor, B.A., and another small book of the same title by Sir T. C. Hope, late Educational Inspector, Northern Division. When I had already made good progress in writing the present work, I met with "A Handbook of Gujarātī Grammar," by P. M. Bhatt, from which I was able to borrow a few useful hints. But a perusal of the Grammar now offered to the public will show that I have not followed any of these works in a servile spirit.

There seems at present to be a great dearth of English works on the Gujarātī language. When I began to study that language in Bombay a few years ago, I found it impossible to procure a single copy of any of the earlier Grammars. Nor should I have derived much assistance

from them if I had, owing to the great improvements which have of recent years taken place in Gujarātī spelling. I trust that students of Gujarātī will find that this little book supplies a real need. The transliterational system employed in the Grammar is an exact one, so that no confusion can arise from the use of English letters to represent Gujarātī words.

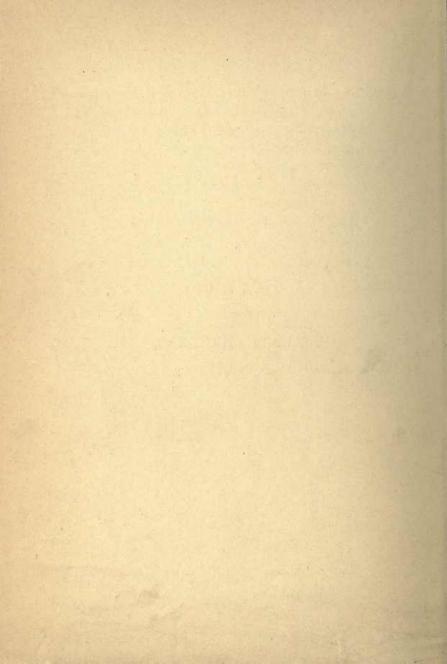
I hope but few errors of the press will be found to have escaped detection, and that the system of transliteration that I have adopted will prevent those few from causing the student any real inconvenience.

W. St. C. T.

LONDON, Jan., 1892.

INDEX.

PART	I. — Gujarātī	Accident, etc.		13
PART	II. — Gujarātī	Reading Lessons		107
PART	IIIGujarātī	Vocabulary .		155



PART I.

GUJARĀTĪ ACCIDENT, &c.

SPECIMENS OF GOOD GUJARĀTĪ WRITING. (From "DASTAK SHIKSHAK.")

सूर्यनी आसपास पृथ्नी असुड नियमे इरेछे माटे दिनस साँमा दुंडा शायछे. निद्रान् धुर्य निधाना पणशी यत्ता मानवी हिपर सरसाध लोगने छे. लाहेर हिंमतनी स्तृतियात गुण् धण्। शीऽ। माणुसीमां लेनामां आने छे. लेम परी रहेवुं सीढ़ें धीशी भवायछे तेम शारीर माणसथी भवायछे. भानपानने भातर छह्गी नथी पणु छैहगीने भातर भानपान छे. जीलवु हित धम्छवु मेनी वृत्ति सह्गुण्डी मनुष्यना हृस्यमां शायछे

THE ELEMENTS OF THE GRAMMAR

OF THE

GUJARĀTĪ LANGUAGE.

THE Gujarātī language belongs, like the Marāthī, Hindī, Panjābī, Oriya, and many other Indian dialects, to the Aryan family, being a daughter of the Sanskrit. closest affinities are with the Western Panjābī on the one side, and the Brai Bhāshā, an old form of Hindī, on the other. Besides various local dialects of Gujarātī, there are three main varieties of the written and spoken language. First, Hindī Gujarātī, which is that adopted-and rightly so-by the Government as the standard, and taught in the schools. Second, Pārsī Gujarātī, the language as spoken and written by the Parsis. This differs from ordinary Gujarātī in that it admits pure Persian words in considerable numbers, especially in connexion with religious matters, besides a host of Arabic and other words taken from the Urdū language, and that its grammar is in a very unfixed and irregular condition. Thirdly, Muhammadan Gujarātī, which, like Pārsī Gujarātī, employs a

great number of words borrowed from the Hindūstānī (and through it from Persian and Arabic). But, though the vocabulary of the language varies considerably according as the speaker is a Hindū, a Pārsī, or a Muslim, yet its grammar—when spoken correctly—is practically one and the same. We have taken Hindū Gujarātī as our standard in this Grammar, for, if that is learnt, the few variations of form used in the other dialects will present no difficulty, especially as they are to a great degree mere matters of spelling.

GUJARĀTĪ PARADIGMS.

T. Nouns :-(a) Masculine. (1) Ending in -o (2) Otherwise: Sing. Plur. Plur. Sing. Abs. — 0 $---\bar{a}(o)$ $---\bar{a}(o)$ Obl. — Obl. ——ā (b) Feminine. Plur. Sing. Abs. ---Obl. — (c) Neuter. (1) Ending in -un (2) Otherwise: Plur. Sing. Plur. Abs. $-u\tilde{n}$ $-a\tilde{n}(o)$ Obl. — \bar{a} — $\bar{a}\tilde{n}(o)$ Obl. — II. VERBS:-(a) Regular. Active Stem, -Pass. Stem, ——ā Infinitive, -vuñ. Gerundive, -vo, vī, vuñ. Present Part., -to, tī, tuñ; tā, tī, tāñ. Past Part., -yo, ī, yuñ; yā, ī, āñ. Connect. Part., -ine. Agential { declin., $-n\bar{a}r$ -o, $-\tilde{\imath}$, $-u\tilde{n}$. { indecl., $-n\bar{a}r$. Pluperf. Part., -el: el-o, -ī, -uñ. Imperative, -, -o. Aorist, — + personal endings. Present Indic. = Aorist + pres. of \sqrt{chha} . Future, — + -īś, -śe, -śe: -īśuñ, -śo, -śe. Future Prec., 3rd Sing. and 2nd Pl., -jo. - Imperat., 2nd Sing. and 2nd Pl., -je, -jo.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

	Aorist.			Optative.
	1	2	3	3
Sing.,	-uñ	-е	- е	-0
Plur.,	-īe	-0	-е	-0

(b) Auxiliaries-Irregular.

(1) \sqrt{chha} , to be Indecl. Pres. Part., $chhat\bar{a}\tilde{n}$ Present: $chh-u\tilde{n}$, -e, -e; -ie, -o, -e. Negative, $nath\bar{i}$.

(2) Hovuñ, to be.

Past, hat-o, -i, -un, &c.
Aorist, ho-un, -y, -y; -ie,

-o, -y.
Fut., haīś, hoīś, &c.
Prec. Fut., hojo.

vuñ, to become.
Aorist: jāuñ, jāy, jāy;
jaīe, jāo, jāy.
thăuñ, thāy, thāy; thaīe,

(3) Javun, to go, and Tha-

thăuñ, thây, thây; thuĩe thão, thây.

Future: jaīś, &c. thaīś, &c.

III. PRONOUNS:-

(a) Relative:—
Sing. Plur.
Abs. je jeo
Obl. je jeo
Agent. jene jeoe

(b) Interrog.:—
Sing. & Plur.
Abs. kon
Obl. $\begin{cases} ko-\\ ke-\\ kona \end{cases}$

(c) Reflexive:—
Sing. & Plur.
Abs. pote

Obl. potā

(d) Personal :-

Sing.

Plur.

1st, huñ, mane, meñ, māre, māro 2nd, tuñ, tane, teñ, tāre, tāro 3rd, te, tene, teṇe, teno. | ame, amne, ame, amāro tame, tamne, tame, tamāro teo, teone (temne), teono, &c.

1st Pers. Inclus. plur. pronoun:
Āpaņe, āpaņne, āpaņe, āpaņo, āpaņāthī, &c.

IV. SIMPLE POSTPOSITIONS:-

 $-ne = ext{to, acc.}$ $-e = ext{agent, at.}$ $-h\tilde{i} = ext{from, with.}$ $-par = ext{upon.}$

CHAPTER I.

THE ALPHABET.

THE Gujarātī Alphabet is derived from the Sanskrit, to which it still bears a considerable resemblance. The difference consists mainly in the omission in Gujarātī of the head line used in joining together most of the Devanāgarī characters. Like the Sanskrit, Gujarātī is written from left to right.

Letters (varn) are divided into Vowels (svar) and Consonants (vyanjan, often pronounced venjan).

§. 1. When initial, that is, when they begin a syllable, the vowels are as follows:—

= a pronounced as u in but.* न्धा = ā a in army. ,, 约 = i i in hit, but often lengthened in sound. i = iee in heel. = u oo in hood. $= \bar{u}$ oo in fool. ê in tête, sometimes almost as e in led. ai in aisle. ,, o in ocean: always long. ow in howl. ,,

^{*} As this vowel a occurs far more frequently in Gujarātī than any other vowel, it is most important that the student should pronounce it correctly, otherwise his conversation will be quite unintelligible.

Or, briefly, the vowels as used by us in transliterating are to be pronounced as in Italian, except that a (>4) is to be carefully given the indistinct or dull sound indicated above.

When these vowel sounds are not initial, they are represented in accordance with the subjoined table. It is to be observed that the first vowel (\mathfrak{R}) is supposed to be inherent in every consonant, except:—(1) when that consonant is followed by some other vowel: (2) when $vir\bar{a}ma$ ($\overline{}$) is written or understood under it: (3) when that consonant is the first portion of a compound letter. Therefore, when this sound a (\mathfrak{R}) is not initial, it possesses no written sign.

NON-INITIAL VOWELS.

It will be noticed that the sign for short i() is always written before the consonant which begins the syllable in

which it (when not initial) occurs. (The reverse of this takes place in the English termination -ble, and seems equally strange to a foreigner.)

§ 2. Simple Consonants.

	CLASS.	CHARACTER.	EQUIV.		CLASS.
	ai).	5	ka		
	ALS	ખ	kha		(E
Щ	rur	ગ	ga		LS.
Ш	gurrurals. anthasthān	ઘ	gha		LABIALS.
	(ka	5+	n'		LABIALS.
	PALATALS. GUTTURALS. (ṭālusthānī). (kanthasthānī).	ચ	kha ga gha n' ch chh j jh n		9
	PALATALS. āļusthānī	y or &	chh		
I	ATA	of	j		
k	PAL āļu	33*	jh		os.
	÷	어 +	'n		LIQUIDS.
Ī	nī).	3	ţ		LIQUIDS.
	CEREBRALS. urddhästhän	8	ţh		Ü
	BBR	3	d		U.S.
	rdd	ढ	dh		TES
	CEREBRALS. (dantasthānī). (murddbāsthānī).	ણ	t th d dh n		ASPIRATES. (ushmā).
	1).	a	t		ASE (us
	LS.	થ	th		
	dentals. ntasthān	E	d		RAL D.
	DE.	ધ	t th d dh		CEREBRAL LIQUID.
	(ds	5 で a s a s a s a s a s a s a s a s a s a	n	7.41	CER

CLASS. CHARACTER. EQUIV.				
	પ	p		
LABIALS. (oshtasthānī)	प कें अलम यर स व अ घ स छ	f		
LABIALS.	or (2)	(Some pronounce it as ph.)		
LAB	બ	b		
0)	ભ	bh		
	ે ન	m		
. (a).	ય	У		
LIQUIDS.	ર	r		
LIQUIDS.	લ	1		
(3)	વ	v		
ಶ್ತ .	રા	ś		
ASPIRATES. (ushmā).	ष	sh		
ASPI)	સ	S		
1	હ	h		
CEREBRAL LIQUID.	ď	ļ		

^{*} \mathfrak{P}_{j} is used to transliterate the Persian j(z): note the inserted dot.

[†] The characters marked thus (†) are rarely used in Gujarātī

Some of the characters above given require two consonants to represent them in transliteration, and yet they all represent simple and uncompounded sounds. The following require some explanation of their pronunciation:—

W kh, as in ink-horn, but as if the k were part of the second syllable.

I g, is always hard, as in go.

U gh, is a slightly more guttural sound than simple g.

The Cerebrals are produced by turning the point of the tongue upwards to touch the top of the palate. The letters ξ (th) and G (dh) are somewhat more emphatically pronounced than the simple ξ (t) and ξ (d). The dental t and d (G and G) are softer than the English equivalents, being formed by applying the point of the tongue to the point of the upper teeth. Be careful not to give G (th) and G (dh) the sound of English th in thought and that of th in thou respectively. Bh (G) is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h is a more emphatic sound than simple h (h). h have in Gujarātī the same sound, but are vulgarly confounded with simple h (h). h before the aspirates has always a

[—]never but in the case of some not properly naturalised Sanskrit words. Those acquainted with Sanskrit will observe that the order and arrangement of the letters in Gujarātī closely follow those of the mother-tongue. Gujarātī adds but one character, cerebral ? (U), to represent a sound not used in classical Sanskrit, though its equivalent Ξ is found in the Rig Veda.

nasal sound (as in the French mon). H, when it comes between two vowels, has a very slight sound, and is often omitted both in speaking and writing. When it is the first letter in a compound consonant also, it is hardly audible. $V(\mathbf{q})$ has a sound midway between the English v and w, but is neither.

Instead of \mathfrak{F} and \mathfrak{A} respectively, the signs $\mathfrak{F}(r\bar{u})$ and $\mathfrak{O}(j\bar{\imath})$ are used. So also $j\bar{u}$ is written \mathfrak{A} , and \mathfrak{O} is $j\bar{u}$: and \mathfrak{P} is ru.

Nasal n is written with a dot above the line, as in $\S \$ (chhokru \tilde{n}). In this Grammar we represent it by \tilde{n} . The dot is called anusv $\tilde{a}r$.

When n immediately precedes b or p it is pronounced as m.

The sign: is called visarga, and is a final h.

The sign o is used to denote contraction; as \mathcal{G} o \mathcal{H} o = i. s. $\bar{\imath}sav\bar{\imath}$ san, = "Christian Year."

R, when the first member of a compound, is written over the following consonant in the form ', as in 24% = arthe. When it is the second member of a compound, it assumes the form of a simple stroke, as y = bra.

Students acquainted with Arabic or Persian must be careful not to give & (gh) and ~ (kh) the sounds of and respectively.

§ 3. Compound Letters.

These are formed by compounding into one, two or more simple characters. The necessity for their use is because of the rule given above, that $\mathfrak{A}(\check{a})$ is inherent in the sound of every consonant. The compounds are generally easily recognised and read. The most important are given below. The two most difficult are $\mathfrak{A} = ksha$, and \mathfrak{A} ina (pronounced gnya).

COMPOUND.	EQUIV.	COMPO	UND.	EQUIV. COMPOUND.			EQUIV.
५ त =	= kta	νο	1 =	pva	स	-	hma
५ ग =	= kna	20	1 =	sta	हैन	=	ghna
ક્રમ =	= kma	20	1 =	stra	ુક્ક	=	ghma
ક્ય =	= kya	સુ	=	sra	3	=	<u>t</u> ta
0.00	= kra	2:	ન =	sma	2	=	ththa
ગવ =		2:	4 =	sya	E	=	dda
ਜ =	= tta	24	ત =	sva	न्स्त	=	nsta
्व =	= tna	1	. =	hra	32	=	krĭ
= او	= tma		, =		्य -		vya
त्य =	= tya				8		
ㅋ =	= tra	ધ		dya			shṭa
ત્વ =	= tva	5,		dra	હ્ય	=	hya
ખ =	= pta	ę ę	L =	ddha	E.	=	dri
પન <u> =</u>	= pna	2	=	ścha	स्थ	=	lya
પ્સ =	= pma	23	ત =	śm a	જ્ય	=	jya
પ્ય =	= pya	2	=	śra	ed or &	1=	lla
પ્ર =	= pra	2	=	śva	ध्य		dhya

When any of these compound consonants is followed by any vowel sign, the inherent \mathfrak{A} (a) is of course rejected, as in the case of simple characters.

Dv, tv, and other compounds of which v forms the final member, are pronounced almost like dd, tt, the v having the effect of apparently adding emphasis to the sound of the first member of the compound, but being itself very slightly pronounced.

§ 4. The Orthography of the Gujarātī language is, in some points, still unsettled, though the preparation and use in schools of Government class-books tend to fix it. In works printed a few years ago, for example, we find $v\bar{a}h\bar{a}\bar{n}n$ for $vah\bar{a}n$, $h\bar{a}t$ for $h\bar{a}th$, $b\bar{a}h\bar{a}r$ for $bah\bar{a}r$, etc. So also $n\bar{a}h\bar{a}no$ is now generally written, and perhaps always pronounced $n\bar{a}no$; and we now have $m\bar{o}t\bar{o}$ for $m\bar{o}h\bar{o}t\bar{o}$, $dah\bar{a}do$ (in Pārsī-Gujarātī pronounced $d\bar{a}ro$) for $d\bar{a}h\bar{a}do$. There is still great uncertainty about i and u, the long and short forms of these being often used as of equal value.

Such forms as rahyo, $kahyu\tilde{n}$, etc., are pronounced almost as if written raiyo, $kaiyu\tilde{n}$, owing to the feeble sound of h.

CHAPTER II.

PARTS OF SPEECH .- NOUNS.

§ 1. There are eight parts of speech, as in English. Of these the Noun $(n\bar{a}m)$, the Pronoun $(sarvan\bar{a}m)$, the Adjective $(vi\acute{s}eshan)$, and the Verb $(kriy\bar{a}pad)$ are capable of inflection $(\bar{a}khyey)$: the rest being indeclinable (avyay).

NOUNS (Nām).

Nouns are Proper (viśeshanām), Common (sāmānyanām), and Abstract (bhāvavāchakanām). They admit of Gender, Number, and Case.

§ 2. GENDER (Jāti).

There are three Genders in Gujarātī; masc. (narajāti), fem. (nārījāti), and neut. (nānyatar).

The Gender of a word is determined either (1) by its meaning, or (2) by its termination.

Among names of living creatures, those clearly denoting males are masc., those denoting females fem., while those which are common to both sexes are generally neuter. E.g. purush a man, a male (vir) is m.: strī a woman is fem., māṇas a human being (homo) is neut.: so also chhokro a boy, masc.; chhokrī a girl, fem.; chhokruñ a child, neut. (Cf. German baß Kinb, and our habit—not confined to bachelors—of speaking of an infant as it.)

The names of the days of the week, of months, of moun-

tains, the heavenly bodies, oceans, seas, winds, divisions of a country, are masculine.

Names of Rivers (except e.g. Brahmaputra, Sindhunad, which are m.), the Earth, Lunar days (except padavo, m.), divisions of the day (except pahor, m., a watch, vigilia), and the following members of the body, viz., ānkh, eye; jāng, thigh; nas, vein; pānpan, eyelid; khāndh, shoulder; and jībh, tongue, are feminine.

Names of classes of animals, villages, cities, districts, the points of the compass, and most names of fruits, are neuter.

§ 3. Gender as fixed by terminations.

Most nouns ending in -o are masculine.*

Nouns derived from the stems of prepositional verbs in Sanskrit, as $vik\bar{a}r$ (fr. \sqrt{kri}), change; $vich\bar{a}r$ (fr. \sqrt{char} , to think), thought: and reduplicated onomatopoeic nouns ending in $-\bar{a}t$ (as $gadgad\bar{a}t$, a rumbling), are masculine.

^{*} Except: juo, f. or n., gambling; chho or chhoo, f., mortar; dho, m., washing.

[†] Except: (1) when the $\bar{i} = Sk$. iyam, \bar{i} jam, &c.; e.g. $p\bar{a}n\bar{i}$, n., water; $loh\bar{i}$ or $lo\bar{i}$, n., blood; $mar\bar{i}$, n., pepper; $b\bar{i}$, n., seed; $gh\bar{i}$, n., 'ghee,' clarified butter. (2) When the \bar{i} is a term. denoting a calling, trade, or indicating in some way a male: e.g. $Pars\bar{i}$, m.; $h\bar{a}th\bar{i}$, m., a male elephant; $dhob\bar{i}$, m., a washerman. (3) A few nouns in \bar{i} are masc.: e.g. $\bar{a}tm\bar{a}$, spirit; $mahim\bar{a}$, glory; $devat\bar{a}$, a god, fire.

[‡] Except ghaiñ, m., wheat.

All abstract nouns ending in $-\bar{a}\bar{\imath}$, $\bar{a}\acute{s}$, -k, van, vat, vad, ut, $t\bar{a}$; and Arabic or Persian words ending in -at or $-\bar{a}s$, are feminine.

Most words ending in -e, -t, or -s, are also feminine.

All abstract nouns having the terminations -an, -an, -an, -pan, -man, van, tva, and most nouns ending in -n,* are neuter, as are also names of countries ending in -stan.

Nouns derived from Sanskrit generally speaking preserve the gender they had in that language. Thus if we know that ghar, house, is the Sanskrit griham, n., we at once know that ghar too is neuter. (But vastu, a thing, is f., as in Hindī and Panjābī, though n. in Sanskrit.)

Words derived from Hindustānī, and through it from Arabic or Persian, usually retain the gender they had in Hindustānī; as, jamīn, ground, f. (Urdu, زمين f.); tasdī, annoyance, f. (Urdu, تصديع f.).

It is impossible to fix the gender of all words by any number of rules, but the apparent difficulty thus caused disappears with practice in the language.

More commonly there are two forms, one *masc.*, denoting a larger, and one *fem.*, meaning a smaller thing; as, *chopdo*, an account book, a large volume; *chopdī*, a book, a small ordinary book.

A few nouns have three forms, one of each gender; as, chhokro, m., a boy; chhokrī, f., a girl; chhokruñ, n., a child.

^{*} Except, e.g. an, 'an oath,' f.

§ 4. Number (Vachan).

In Gujarātī there are two numbers, Singular and Plural (called ekavachan and bahuvachan or anekavachan respectively). The plural termination is universally -o, though this ending is not always required to denote plurality. A few classes of nouns (see under Declension) undergo a slight change before taking this affix.

Some nouns, as tal, mag, adad, marī, are used only in the plural.

Such nouns of materials as retī, sand, vāļ, hair, rū, cotton, māṭī, soil, earth, dhānya, corn; also names of metals, as sunuñ, gold, rūpuñ, silver; and moreover all abstract nouns, as nyāy, justice, satyatā, truth, śuddhatā, purity, pāp, guilt, etc., are generally used only in the singular. The plural is, however, used when either (1) different kinds of the thing specified are meant, or (2) when something special is implied. Thus dhānyo means 'various kinds of corn.' Cf. in English, "in deaths oft": i.e. 'in different kinds of peril of death.' Ex., "Amārāñ pāp ghanāñ chhe," 'our sins are many.' Here pāp is plural, as its adjj. show, though it has not assumed a plural ending.

When a cardinal numeral (two, three, etc.), or an adjective denoting all or many, precedes a noun, and when plurality is in this way sufficiently indicated, the noun commonly remains in the singular form, though with a plural meaning. E.g., Tamāre gher vīs māṇas (for māṇaso) āvaśe, 'twenty men will come to your house.' But when

a noun ends in -o, masc., or -un, neut., in the singular, it must take the plural form in such a case.

Sometimes a noun of material has a plural with a difference of meaning: e.g. $lugdu\tilde{n}$, cloth; $lugd\tilde{a}\tilde{n}$, clothes, garments; $lodhu\tilde{n}$, iron; $lodha\tilde{n}$, tools.

A noun often occurs in the plural when the meaning is singular, in order to show respect. This, however, is the case only with nouns signifying persons. Ex., mārā pyārā bāp sārā chhe, 'my dear father(s) is (are) good.' If the noun so used is feminine, its adjective is put in the plural neuter, as mārāñ beheno āvyāñ hatāñ, 'my sister(s) had come' (vide p. 36, § 4).

§ 5. DECLENSION (Rūpākhyān).

With regard to declension, nouns in Gujarātī are divided into two classes:—(1) those that end in -o, masc. and -uñ, neut.; and (2) those that do not.

The former class have two forms, the Absolute and the Oblique. The Oblique is formed from the Absolute by changing the -o or $-u\tilde{n}$ into $-\bar{a}$; and is used before all postpositions, and also as the Vocative.

As nouns belonging to the second class do not end in -o or -un, it is evident that they remain unchanged in the singular.

In the plural of all nouns the Absolute and the Oblique cases are one and the same in form.

Nouns ending in -o, masc., take as their plural - \bar{a} instead; the plural thus corresponding in form with the Oblique

Singular. To this, -o may be added as a further sign of plurality.

Neuters in $-u\tilde{n}$ change this ending in the Plural into $-\tilde{a}\tilde{n}$, to which they may add -o.

All other nouns may have the plural of the same form as the singular. Feminines in $-\bar{\imath}$, however, almost always add -o to form the plural; and other nouns also may do so when any plural sign is required.

We have, therefore, the following scheme :-

Class I.

Masc		Neut.		
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	
Abs. dikr-o	$dikr\bar{a}$ -(o)	lugḍ-uñ	lugḍ-āñ-(o)	
Obl. dikr-ā	$dikrar{a}\cdot(o)$	$lugd\cdot \bar{a}*$	lugḍ-āñ-(o)	

Class II.

Mas	c.	N	eut.
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Abs. purush	purush-(o)	$n\bar{a}m$	$n\bar{a}m$ - (o)
Obl. purush	purush-(o)	$n\bar{a}m$	$n\bar{a}m$ - (o)

Feminine.

	Sing.	Plur.
Abs.	$dikr\bar{\imath}$	dikrī-o
Obl.	$dikr\bar{\imath}$	dikrī-o

^{*} Some writers prefer to write the *obl. neut*. with a nasal, e.g. $lugd\bar{a}\bar{n}$, both in nouns and adjectives, but it seems best not to do so.

Instead of the cases* of the Sanskrit, Gujarātī expresses the relation of the nouns to the other words in a sentence by certain small words corresponding to our English prepositions. The only difference is that (1) these words follow instead of preceding the nouns which they govern, and are hence styled postpositions: and (2) that they are united in writing to their nouns, forming one word with them. The postpositions are attached to the oblique form of the noun. Those most commonly used are:—

ne, to (also expresses the direct object).
e, by, at. no, nī, nuñ, of. māñ, in.
thakī, vatī, or thī, from, with (instrument).

In Nouns of Class I., the $-\bar{a}$ of the Oblique form is usually omitted before the addition of $-\bar{e}$: we have therefore both $dikr\bar{a}$ -e and dikre to mean 'by a son.' With this class of nouns, -e means only 'by,' denoting the Agent: but with nouns of Class II. it also means 'at,' and in this case may be compounded with $th\bar{\imath}$, as $ni\dot{s}\bar{a}leth\bar{\imath}$.

The termination -no-nī-nuñ, + agrees in number, gender

^{*} The native Grammars conform to the Sanskrit system and arrange the nouns and these postpositions into seven (or in some books eight) cases (vibhaktī). This is, however, alien to the spirit of the Gujarātī, quite as much as a similar scheme would be to that of the English language. It has, nevertheless, the advantage (?) of making difficult what is easy.

[†] When a postposition beginning with a consonant is attached to a noun ending in one, the two consonants do not coalesce to form a compound letter. This is because, according to theory, the inherent vowel -a follows the last consonant of the noun. Thus dev, a god, is

and case with the noun following, really turning its own noun into an adjective; as, ā māṇasnā dikrāne, 'to this man's son;' e rājānī dikrī, 'that king's daughter.' (Vide Adjectives.)

More than one postposition may be attached at the same time to a noun; as, $nis\bar{a}l$, 'a school;' $nis\bar{a}leth\bar{\imath}$ or $nis\bar{a}leth\bar{\imath}$, 'from in the school' or 'from at school;' gharmānnī chhokrī, 'the girl of in the house,' i.e. 'who is in the house.'

The Absolute form may be used as the object of a verb, and very commonly is so when the noun denotes a thing without life. The Oblique with -ne more commonly expresses the object when it is a noun denoting a living being, or when it is desired to emphasize the object.

The Absolute is sometimes used instead of the obl. with a preposition to denote point of time; as, te dahādo mārī dikrī gaī, 'that day my daughter went.'

It is also used to express measure, where we in English use 'of'; as, tran lotā pānī āpo, 'Give three vessels of water.' (Cf. German Ein Glas Wein, etc.)

supposed to end in a (and to be deva). But as this inherent vowel in such instances is never heard, it would merely mislead the learner to write devane and expect him to pronounce it devne.

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE (Viśeshan).

In Gujarātī, adjectives precede the nouns which they qualify.

§ 1. Adjectives are of two kinds: (1) Declinable $(vik\bar{a}r\bar{\imath})$, and (2) Indeclinable $(avik\bar{a}r\bar{\imath})$. To the former class belong all adjectives which have the termination $-u\bar{n}$ in the neut. absolute. The masc. abs. of these ends in -o, and the fem. abs. in $-\bar{\imath}$, as $r\bar{a}t-o$, $-\bar{\imath}$, $-u\bar{n}$. These are declined precisely on the model of chhokro, chhokr $\bar{\imath}$, chhokru \bar{n} , i.e. the m. as dikro, the f. as dikr $\bar{\imath}$, and the n. as $lugdu\bar{n}$.

When the adjective is declinable, the noun which it qualifies (called its višeshya) does not necessarily assume the -o of the plural if it belong to Class II. of nouns, the plurality being sufficiently indicated by the adj., as ghanān ghar or ghanān gharo, 'many houses.'

Adjectives that do not end in $-u\tilde{n}$ in the neut. abs. sing. remain unaltered when affixed to a noun, as $l\tilde{a}l$, sufed.

§ 2. When declinable, the adj. agrees with its noun in gender, number and case; but the postpositions are not affixed to adjectives when they qualify nouns expressed.*

^{*} This shows that these postpositions are not in Gujarātī case-endings, otherwise they would be affixed to adjectives too, as the case-endings are in Sanskrit, Latin and Greek. The only exception to this rule is in the case of the postposition -e, in certain instances. (Vide Cap. VI. ii. § 6, nos. (3) and (4), pp. 83 and 84.)

If, however, the noun is understood, the adj. is used as a noun, and takes the postpositions accordingly.

The plural term. -o is not generally added to plural adjectives when followed by plural nouns; but may be added to them when the noun is feminine, e.g., nani dikrio or nānīō dikrīo, 'little daughters.'

A noun with the affixes -no, m., -nī, f., -nuñ, n., when followed by another noun, practically becomes a declinable adjective and is treated as such: as, ā chhokrānuñ pustak, 'this boy's book; 'ā chhokrānā pustak māñ, 'in this boy's Te dungrone raste āvyo, 'he came by way of the mountains.' Here ne does not mean 'to,' but is formed from -no, just as chhokre is from chhokro, and agrees with raste. (Vide note on preceding page.)

When one adj. qualifies two nouns of different genders, it is put in the neuter plural; as, bhalān mā pāp, 'good parents.' This is so when the adj. is the predicate also, as tamārā bhāī tathā tamārī beheno ghanāñ chhe, 'your brothers and your sisters are numerous.'

§ 3. For the sake of clearness we add an example of (1) a declinable, and (2) an indeclinable adj. attached to a noun with postpositions affixed :-

(1) Declinable. Singular.

moto mendho a big ram. Abs. motā mendhā Obl. motā mendhāne... to etc. motā mendhe by c 2

Plural.

Abs. moṭā menḍhāo . . . big rams.
Obl. moṭā menḍhāo . . . ,,
moṭā menḍhāone . . to ,,
etc.
moṭā menḍhāoe . . . by ,,

(2) Indeclinable. Singular.

Abs. and Obl. $sufed\ ghar \dots$ a white house. $sufed\ ghare \dots$ at ,, $sufed\ gharthar{\imath} \dots$ from ,,

Plural.

Abs. and Obl. $sufed\ ghar(o)$. . . white houses. $sufed\ gharom\bar{a}\bar{n}$. in ,, $sufed\ gharoth\bar{\imath}$. . from ,,

§ 4. When an adjective qualifies a fem. noun plural, which denotes a person or persons, the adj. is generally put in the NEUTER plural to imply respect; as, marān mā sārān chhe, 'my mother is good.' (Here mā is in the 'plural of respect.') So also in addressing females, O mārān pyārān beheno, 'O my dear sister' or 'sisters.'

If one adjective qualifies (not both but) either of two nouns, which follow it, and are of different genders, the adj. agrees with the noun nearest to it; as, jo ihān doso purush ke strī hoy, 'if any old man or woman be here.' The same rule holds good if the adjective in such an

instance be the predicate; as, gāy ke ghodo langdo hoy, 'if the cow or the horse be lame.'

When a declinable adj. is used as an adverb to qualify another adj. attached to a noun, it agrees with the noun in gender, number and case; as, \bar{A} ghodo ghano $r\bar{a}to$ (or $l\bar{a}l$) chhe, 'this horse is very red.'

When a declinable adj. is used adverbially to qualify a verb, it agrees with the subject of the verb; as, te $sip\bar{a}\bar{\imath}$ dhīmo hinto hato, 'that sepoy was walking slow,' (i.e. slowly): \bar{a} $qhod\bar{\imath}$ $ghan\bar{\imath}$ $dod\bar{\imath}$, 'this mare ran much.'

§ 5. Degrees of Comparison.

No change in the form of an adjective occurs to express the Comparative and Superlative Degrees. But the positive denotes the *comparative* when it is preceded in the same sentence by a noun or pronoun with the postposition -kartāñ or -thī attached to it; e.g., māṇas paśukartāñ buddhimān chhe, 'a man is wiser than a beast.'

When the adj. is preceded by a word denoting all, to which the before-mentioned postpositions are affixed, it denotes the superlative relation; as, Māruñ ghar badhāñ-thī sāruñ chhe, 'my house is the best of all.'

§ 6. The Numeral ek, 'one,' is added to adjectives denoting many, or any definite or indefinite number, to make a slight change in their significance. In such cases the numeral may drop its vowel. Thus we have, from ghanun, 'many,' nom. pl. m. ghanu + ek = ghanu or ghanu, 'a good number;' fem. ghanu or ghanu is neut. ghanu or ghanu or ghanu is ghanu or ghanu or ghanu is ghanu is ghanu or ghanu is ghanu is ghanu or ghanu is ghanu is ghanu is ghanu is ghanu or ghanu is ghanu is ghanu or ghanu is gh

CHAPTER IV.

THE PRONOUN (Sarvanām).

§ 1. Personal Pronouns.

These are slightly irregular in declension, but will be easily learnt from the following tables :-

1st Person.

Plur. Sing. Huñ, I. Ame, we. mane, me, to me. amne, us, to us. meñ, or me, by me. ame, by us. mare (with saru, &c.), (for) amāre, (sāru, &c.), (for) me. us. $\begin{array}{c}
m\bar{a}r\text{-}o, \text{ m.,} \\
-\bar{\imath}, \text{ f.,} \\
-u\bar{n}, \text{ n.,}
\end{array}
\right\} \text{ my.}$ $am\bar{a}r$ -o, m., -i, f., our. $-u\tilde{n}$, n., amārāthī, from us. mārāthī, from me. amārāmān, in us. mārāmāñ, in me.

2nd Person.

Plur. Sing. Tame, you. Tuñ, thou. tamne, you, to you. tane, thee, to thee. ten or te, by thee. tame, by you. tamāre (sāru, &c.), (for) you. tare (saru, &e.), (for) thee. tār-o, m., —-ī, f., tamār-o, m., —-ī, f., } ---uñ, n., ---uñ, n., tārāthī, from thee. tamārāthī, from you. tārāmāñ, in thee. tamārāmān, in you.

3rd Person.

Sing. Plur. Teo, they. Te, he, she, it. tene, him, to him, &c. teone, temne, them, to them, tene, by him. teoe, temne, by them. tene (sāru), (for) him. teone, temne (sāru), for them. teono, &c., or temno, &c., their. te-no, $--n\bar{\imath}$, of him, her, &c. $\frac{1}{temn\bar{a}m\bar{a}\bar{n}}$ in them. tethī, tenāthī, from him. temān, tenāmān, in him.

In the First and Second Persons there is no distinction of Gender. In the Third,* tenīe is often used for the fem., 'by her,' and less commonly tenīne for 'to her,' and tenīno, etc., for 'of her,' 'hers': the other forms, however, may be used as feminine too, and are said to be more correct.

Wherever $m\ddot{a}$ or $m\ddot{a}r\ddot{a}$ occurs above, muj may be used instead in the 1st Person, and similarly in the 2nd Person tuj instead of ta or $t\ddot{a}r\ddot{a}$; but these forms are not used in writing and are not considered so correct.

In the Plural, we may have amo instead of ame (in the Agential amoe), and tamo (Agential tamoe) for tame.

Ame is used for we when the person addressed is not included, and may be called the exclusive pronoun. When the person or persons addressed are included in the 'we,'

^{*} The pronouns tevan, m. and tenī f., for 'he' and 'she,' are much used in Pārsī-Gujarātī. Vide some examples in Part V. of the subjoined Reading Lessons.

another pronoun, $\bar{A}pane$, is employed instead. It is declined thus:— $\bar{A}pane$, we; $\bar{a}pane$, us, to us; $\bar{a}pane$, by us, $\bar{a}pan\bar{a}th\bar{i}$, from us; $\bar{a}pan\bar{a}m\bar{a}n$, in us; $\bar{a}pano$, $-\bar{i}$, $-\bar{u}n$, our (poetically $\bar{a}pado$, $-\bar{i}$, -un).

§ 2. Honorific Pronoun.

 $\bar{A}p$ is used sometimes in addressing a superior, never as in Urdū in speaking to an equal. It is declined as if it were a noun, the postpositions being added quite regularly; as, $\bar{a}p$ -no, - $n\bar{i}$, - $nu\tilde{n}$, 'of your honour'; $\bar{a}pth\bar{i}$, 'from your honour,' etc. It is plural, and of the 2nd Person, (not, as in Urdū, of the 3rd).

The usual word for 'you' is tame, which is used just as the corresponding English word. $Tu\bar{n}$ is rarely used but in addressing children, except in the villages, where the country-people address one another by this pronoun.

§ 3. Reflexive Pronoun.

The Reflexive Pronoun is pote, Obl. potā. It is used for all three genders and both numbers, and signifies 'himself,' 'herself,' 'itself,' 'themselves,' being of the third person. The Agential corresponds with the Absolute in form, and for potāthī, 'from himself,' &c., we may also have potānāthī, with the same meaning. A reduplicated form, potpote, is also used with a distributive sense, 'each himself.' E.g. while te logo potāne gher gayā means 'those people went to their own home,'—implying that they had one home in common,—te logo potpotānē gher

gayā would mean 'those people went each to his own home.' (Gher is for ghare, i.e. ghar + the termination -e meaning in or at,—here to.) Another reflexive pronoun is pande, 'himself,' 'self'; as, Rājā pande bhanelo hato.

It is necessary to call attention to the fact that pote, in the possessive form potāno, potānī, potānuñ, is not used with regard to the 1st, and hardly ever with reference to the 2nd person. Therefore, instead of saying, as in Urdū, maiñ apnī kitāb parhtā hūñ, in Gujarātī we say huñ mārī chopdī vānchun chhuñ. But we say:—Huñ pote chālyo, 'I myself went;' tuñ pote jośe, 'thou thyself shalt see;' teo pote āvyā, 'they themselves came:' also, Huñ potāno nyāya karto nathī, 'I judge not myself,' because nyāya karvo is a verb.

Instead of potpotāno, sau sauno (sau = 'each') may be used; as, tame sau saunī jagāe beśī jāo, 'go ye and sit down, each in his own place.'

§ 4. Interrogative Pronouns.

- 1. Kon, 'who?' is of both numbers and is of all three genders. In its declension it has three forms for the Oblique, viz. kona, ko and ke, otherwise it is regular, being declined like a noun of Class II. by the addition of the proper postpositions, as konane, kone, or kene, 'whom?' to whom?' Like other pronouns it allows the possessive to be used, instead of the simple oblique, before -māñ and -thī, as konthī, konāthī, or kenāthī, 'from whom?'
 - 2. Kayo, m., kaī, f., kayuñ, n., = 'which?' (Urdū

كونسا). It is declined like an ordinary adjective of its class. Another form is kiyo, keī, kiyuñ.

3. Śo, m., \hat{si} , f., \hat{sun} , n., = 'What?' is declined regularly, except that (1) in the sing. it has two forms of the oblique, \hat{sa} and \hat{se} , m. and n.; and (2) that its agential form, after the manner of the personal pronouns, prefixes n to the postposition -e, becoming \hat{sane} or \hat{sene} , by what?' The neut. is used as a pronoun, 'What?'; the word is rather an interrogative adjective than a pronoun in other respects; as, teo \hat{si} rite e $k\bar{a}m$ kare chhe, 'in what manner do they do this work?' (The \hat{s} in this word is almost universally pronounced as if it were s.)

§ 5. Relatives and Indefinites.

1. Koī, 'any one,' 'some one,' with a negative 'no one,' is also a relative adj. When a pronoun it takes the affixed postpositions. The Oblique is the same as the Absolute form; e.g., ā roṭlī koīne āpo, 'give this bread to some one.' When koī may mean either a male or a female, its verb is generally neuter; as, koī jāṇṭuñ nahatuñ, 'no one knew.'

2. Je, 'who,' 'which,' 'that,' is of all three genders. It is declined on the model of Te. Whenever je occurs in a sentence, if it is not preceded by te, the latter must follow it; as, Rājāe tene mārī nāñkhyo, etle je sipāī meñ kāle dītho, tene, 'The king killed him, i.e. the soldier whom I saw yesterday, him.'

'Whoever,' whosoever,' whatever,' is expressed by the reduplication of je, and consequently of the accompanying

te; as, Je je thekāņe dhartī rasāļ dīthī, te te thekāņe teo vaśyā, 'Wherever they found the ground fertile, there they dwelt.'

Kaiñ or kāiñ is the indefinite pronoun denoting an uncertain amount or quantity = 'some' (Urdū , some'); as, 'Give me some tea,' mane kain chā āpo. It is therefore generally used for inanimate things.

§ 6. Demonstratives.

These are more properly adjectives than pronouns, but are entered here because, when used apart from nouns, they become pronouns. The principal are: \bar{A} , this; E, that; Te, that; Pelo, $-\bar{\imath}$, $-u\bar{n}$, that; Olyo, $-\bar{\imath}$, $-u\bar{n}$, that; $Fal\bar{a}no$, $-\bar{\imath}$, $-u\bar{n}$, a certain. The last three are declined as regular declinable adjectives, the first three when used as demonstratives are indeclinable.

From \bar{A} , E, Te, Je, Ke, a number of very useful demonstrative, relative, and interrogative adjectives are formed, as will be seen from the appended list:—

 \bar{A} , this.

āvo, such as this.ātlo, as much as this.āvado, as big as this.

E, that.

evo, such as that.
etlo, as much as that.
evado, as big as that.

Te, that.
tevo, such as that.
tetlo, as much as that.
tevado, as big as that.

The forms from Je and Ke are produced by putting J and K respectively in place of T in the last column. These words are all regularly declined; as, kevo, m.; kevī, f.; kevuñ, n. If united to a preceding noun they require the oblique form of it; as, tobrā jevuñ moñ, 'a somewhat angry face,' 'puffed cheeks.'

The enclitic j is often attached to pronouns (as also to nouns) in Gujarātī to add emphasis, being used just as is -tza (\neg) in Marāṭhī and $h\bar{\imath}$ in Urdū. So we have tej= 'he indeed,' 'that very;' tevoj, 'just such as that,' &c. If a postposition is added to the noun, j follows the postposițion; as, \bar{a} $ni\acute{s}alm\bar{a}nj$, 'in this very school.'

CHAPTER V.

THE VERB (Kriyāpad).

The Gujarātī Verb is conjugated very simply, there being only one conjugation which is employed for all verbs. A few verbs (vide § 11), form their past tense irregularly, but when formed it is conjugated just as in all other verbs in the language.

§ 1. The Stem $(m\bar{u}l)$ of the Verb is its simplest form, and is used as the 2nd Sing. Imperat. also, e.g. utar, 'descend.'

The Infinitive is formed by affixing $-vu\bar{n}$ to the stem; as, $utar-vu\bar{n}$, 'to descend.' This is the part of the verb given in dictionaries.

The Present Part. changes the $-vu\tilde{n}$ of the Infinitive into -to, $-t\tilde{i}$, $-tu\tilde{n}$, (e.g. utar-to), and is declined as a regular adjective.

The Preterite is formed by adding -yo, $-\overline{i}$, $-yu\overline{i}$ to the stem for m., f. and n., respectively; as, utar-yo, 'he descended.'

The Aorist is formed by adding to the stem the remains of the original Sanskrit pronominal terminations. In Gujarātī these are:—

Sin	ig.	Plur.
1st,	-นที	-īe
2nd,	-e	-0
3rd,	-e	- e

The Future is formed by adding to the stem the following affixes:—

Sing	Plur.
1st, -īś.	-īśuñ (also -aśuñ and -iśuñ).
2nd, -śe (vulgje).	-śo (vulg. jo).
3rd, -śe.	-śe.

There are three Primary Tenses—the Aorist, the Future, and the Preterite. From the first and last of these, and from the declinable participles, compound tenses are formed with the assistance of the auxiliary Verbs, \sqrt{chha} and $hovu\tilde{n}$, 'to be.'

The Passive Voice is formed from the stem by adding $-\bar{a}$ to it, and then affixing the terminations already mentioned; as, lakh, 'write thou;' $lakh-\bar{a}-vu\bar{n}$, 'to be written;' $lakh\bar{a}\acute{s}e$, 'it will be written,' &c.

If the stem have an intransitive signification, three or more forms may spring from it; as, marvuñ, 'to die;' mārvuñ, 'to strike;' marāvuñ, 'to quarrel;' marāvavuñ, 'to cause to be beaten:' so also karvuñ, 'to do,' 'to make;' karāvuñ, 'to be done;' karāvavuñ, 'to cause to be done,' although karvuñ is transitive.

The two great classes of Verbs are:—(1) Transitives (Sakarmak), and (2) Intransitives (Akarmak). It is only in the use of the Preterite, and of the tenses derived from it, that any difference between the two classes is noticeable as far as conjugation is concerned. We take the latter first:—

§ 2. Intransitive Verb. Active Voice (Karmak Bhed or Mūļ Bhed).

I. Simple Tenses. — (1) Primary.

(a) Aorist (Aniyamitavartmānkā!).

Sing.

1st Pers., huñ utar-uñ, I may descend.

2nd Pers., tun utar-e, thou mayest descend.

3rd Pers., te utar-e, he may descend.

Plur.

1st Pers., ame utar-ie, we may descend.

2nd Pers., tame utar-o, you may descend.

3rd Pers., teo utar-e, they may descend.

(b) Imperative.

2nd Pers., Sing., utar; Plur., utaro.

(c) Future (Bhavishyakā!).

Sing.

1st Pers., huñ utar-īś, I shall descend.

2nd Pers., tuñ utar-śe, thou wilt descend.

3rd Pers., te utar-śe, he will descend.

Plur.

1st Pers., ame utar-īśuñ, we shall descend.

2nd Pers., tame utar-śo, you will descend.

3rd Pers., teo utar-śe, they will descend.

(d) Preterite (Bhūtakāl).—1st, 2nd, 3rd Person.

(. 100, wha, old 1 clool.
Sing.	Plur.
m., utar-yo,* (I, thou, he)	m., utar-yā, we, &c.
descended.	
f., utar-ī, (I, thou, she) des-	f., utar-ī, we, &c.
cended.	
n., utar-yuñ, (I, thou, it)	n., utar-yāñ, we, &c.
descended.	

To these forms the pronouns are prefixed, as $hu\tilde{n}$, $tu\tilde{n}$, te utaryo, if the subject is masc.; $hu\tilde{n}$, $tu\tilde{n}$, te utar \tilde{i} , if fem.; and $hu\tilde{n}$, $tu\tilde{n}$, te utaryu \tilde{n} , if it is neuter.

§ 3. I. Simple Tenses.—(2) Secondary.

(a) Past Subjunctive (Sanketabhūtakā!).

This has only one form for both numbers and all three persons.

1st, 2nd, and 3rd Person.

Sing.	Plur.
utar-at, (If I, &c.) were or	
would be.	or would be.

(For the use of this tense, see examples under the Past Subj. of the auxiliary hovuñ.)

^{*} Sometimes the y of the preterite is omitted in the old style of writing, and we have utaro, gao, karo, for utaryo, gayo, karyo, &c. At others e is put instead of y, as $\bar{a}veo$ for $\bar{a}vyo$.

(b) Past Indefinite (Aniyamitabhūtakāļ).

This is the Present Participle used as a finite Verb. It therefore agrees in *gender* also with its subject.

1st, 2nd and 3rd Person.

Sing.
m., utar-to, I, thou, he, used to descend.
f., utar-tī, I, thou, she, &c.

utar-tā, we, you, they, used to descend.utar-tī, we, you, they, &c.

Plur.

The pronouns are prefixed quite regularly to these tenses.

n., utar-tuñ, I, thou, it, &c. | utar-tuñ, we, you, they, &c.

(c) The Precative.

This is the same as the Aorist, except that in the 3rd Pers. Sing. and Pl. the termination -o is used instead of -e; as, te, teo utaro, 'may he, they descend.' Ex., Kirpā tamāre sāthe thāo (fr. thavuñ), 'Grace be with you.' It is especially used in blessing or cursing. Another Precative (Future Precative) is formed by changing the -śe of the 3rd Sing. and 3rd Plur. into -jo; as, tamāruñ bhaluñ thajo, 'may you good be,' i.e. 'may you be blessed;' Te śrāpit thāo, 'may he be cursed.'

Hence we have: te utar-jo, sing.; teo utar-jo, plur.

(d) Future Imperative.

Sing.
tuñ utar-je, th

Plur.

2nd Pers., tuñ utar-je, thou shalt descend.

tame utar-jo, you shall descend.

§ 4. II. Compound Tenses.

These are formed by combining with the Aorist, the Preterite, and the declinable Participles and Gerund (or Gerundive), certain tenses of the substantive verb. We therefore give here (1) the Participles and Gerund (Gerundive, Infinitive, &c.) of the ordinary verb, and (2) the conjugation of the Auxiliary.

(a) Participles, &c. (Kridant).

Infinitive, utar-vuñ.

Pres. Participle, utar-to, -ti,

Connective Participle, utarine. Gerundive, utar-vo, -vī, -vuñ. Past Participle, utar-yo, -ī, -yuñ.

Plup. Participle, utar-elo, -ī, -uñ, (also utarel, indeel.).

Agential (declinable), utar-nār-o, -ī, -uñ; (indecl.) utarnār, 'a descender.'

The Infinitive when declined is treated like a neuter noun ending in -un, and makes its oblique in -va; as, te vanchvane avyo, or vanchva avyo, he came to read.

The Gerundive is an adjective, declined quite regularly, and agrees with the noun it qualifies; as, māre ā chopḍī vānchvī, 'hie liber mihi est legendus,' 'I must read this book;' teņe e kām karvun, 'illi id opus faciendum,' 'he must do that work.' The verb 'to be' is generally omitted in such sentences.

When used impersonally the Gerundive is neuter; as, $t\bar{a}re\ ramvu\tilde{n}$, 'thou must play.' It is then a kind (often a polite kind) of imperative.

The Present, Past, and Pluperfect Participles are declinable Adjectives. The declinable form of the Agential Participle is also regular. The indeclinable Agential Participle is generally a noun.

The Connective Participle is like our Perfect Participle Active, as utarine, 'having descended.' It is indeclinable, and has a shorter form (utarī) also.

The Neuter Plural of the Present Participle is often counted as an independent Participle. It is used to denote 'in the state of,' as utartan, 'in the act of descending.'* This form of the participle is also used in such constructions as the following: -Tene chopdi vanchtan sikhvuñ, 'he must learn to read a book.'

§ 5. (b) The Substantive (Auxiliary) Verb.

(1) Root Vchha. Present Tense.

Sing. 1st Pers., huñ chhuñ, I am.

2nd Pers., tuñ chhe, thou art. tame chho, you are. 3rd Pers., te chhe, he is.

Plur.

ame chhie (vulg. chhaiye), we are.

teo chhe, they are.

(The negative of this is 'nathī,' which is used for all three persons and both numbers.)

Pres. Part. Neut. Plur. chhatān, being. Inf. caret.

^{*} Equivalent to utarte hue, in Urdu.

(2) Root /ho, 'to be' or 'to become.'

Aorist.

Sing.

Plur

1st Pers., huñ houñ, I may be. 2nd Pers., tun hoy,* thou may'st be.

ame hoie, we may be. tame ho, you may be.

3rd Pers., te hoy, he may be. teo hoy, they may be.

Present.

The present is formed by adding the present of \(\sqrt{chha} \) to the above; as, hun houn chhun, 'I am being,' I am becoming,' &c. The negative is hun hoto nathi, &c.

Infinitive, hovuñ.

Gerundive, hov-o, -ī, -uñ.

Pres. Part., hot-o, -ī, -uñ. Connective Part., hoine.

(Past Part., hav-o, -ī, -uñ.) Imper., 2nd sing, and pl., ho.

Agent. Part, decl., honaro, -ī, -uñ; indecl., honar. Precative Future, hojo.

Fut. Imperative, tun hoje; tame hojo.

Future.

Sing.

Plur.

1st Pers., haīś, hoīś, I shall be, &c.

ame haīśun, hoīśun.

2nd Pers., tuñ hase, hose, haiś, hoiś, (hoje).

tame haśo, hośo, (hojo).

3rd Pers., te hase, hose.

teo hase, hose.

The forms in j are vulgar, and not used in written composition.

^{*} In all verbs of which the stem ends in a vowel, the termination y takes the place of -e wherever the latter would otherwise occur, just as is the case in Hindī.

Past.—1st, 2nd and 3rd Person.

Sing.

m., hato (havo, vulgar).

f., hatī (havī ,,).

n., hatuñ (havuñ ,,).

Plur.

hatā (havā, vulgar) | \$

hatī (havī ,,) |

hatā (havū ,,) |

hatāñ (havuñ ,,) |

When the negative na is prefixed, this tense becomes nahoto, &c.

Past Subjunctive.

In all persons and both numbers, . . . hot (vulg. hat). '(If) I, &c., were: 'e.g., Jo huñ sāro hot, to mārā mittro paṇ bhalā hot, 'If I were good, my friends would be good also;' Jo tame āndhlā hot, to tamne pāp na hot, 'If ye were blind, ye had not had sin.'

§ 6. Compound Tenses of Utarvuñ, 'To descend.'

Indicative Mood (Nischayarth).

(a) Present Tense (Vartmān).

Formed by adding the present of \sqrt{chha} to the agrist.

Sing.

Plur.

1st Pers., huñ utar-uñ chh-uñ I am descending.

2nd Pers., tuñ utar-e chh-e, thou art descending.

3rd Pers., te utar-e chh-e, he is descending.

ame utar-īe chh-īe, we are descending.

tame utar-o chh-o, you are descending.

teo utar-e chh-e, they are descending.

This tense has also the meaning, 'I descend,' &c. In

the Negative, the Present Participle with nathī is used instead of the tense as above given; as, huñ utarto (-tī, tuñ) nathī, 'I do not descend.'

(b) Imperfect (Vartmān Bhūt).

Formed by adding the Past Tense of hovun to the Present Participle.

1st, 2nd, and 3rd Person.

Sing.

m., huñ, &c., utarto hato.
f., huñ, &c., utartī hatī.
n., huñ, &c., utartuñ hatuñ.

Plur.
ame, &c., utartā hatā.
ame, &c., utartī hatī.
ame, &c., utartā hatāñ.

Meaning—'I, &c., was descending.' Negative—huñ, &c., utarto nahoto, 'I was not descending.'

(c) Future Gerundial (Bhavishyavartmān).

Formed from the Gerund or Infinitive by adding the postposition -no, m.; $-n\bar{i}$, f.; $-nu\bar{n}$, n., to the oblique form, and appending the present of \sqrt{chha} .

Sing.

1st Pers., m., huñ utarvāno
chhuñ, I am about to
descend.

Plur.
ame utarvānā chhīe, &c.

The rest of the persons are formed quite regularly, in a similar way.

(d) Past Gerundial (Bhavishyabhūt).

Formed by adding the past tense of hovun to the possessive form of the gerund, as in the preceding tense.

1st, 2nd, and 3rd Person.

Sing. Plur.
m., huñ utarvāno hato, &c. ame utarvānā hatā, &c.

Meaning-'I was about to descend,' &c.

(e) Present Perfect (Bhūtavartmān).

Formed by adding the present of \sqrt{chha} to the Past Participle.

Sing.

1st Pers., m., huñ utaryo chhuñ, I have descended.

2nd Pers., m., tuñ utaryo chhe, thou hast descended.

3rd Pers., m., te utaryo chhe, he has descended. Plur.

ame utaryā chhīe, we have descended.

tame utaryā chho, you have descended.

teo utaryā chhe, they have descended.

For the fem. and neut., the utaryo becomes utarī and utaryuñ respectively in the Sing., and utarī and utaryāñ in the Plur. (With this and the Pluperfect tense compare the French 'Je suis allé,' and our 'I am come,' for 'I have come.')

(f) Pluperfect (Dvitvabhūt).

Formed by adding the Past of hovun to the Past Participle.

1st, 2nd and 3rd Person.

Sing.

Plur.

m., hun, &c., utaryo hato. f., huñ, &c., utarī hatī. n., huñ, &c., utaryuñ hatuñ.

ame, &c., utaryā hatā. ame, &c., utarī hatī. ame, &c., utaryāñ hatāñ.

Meaning-'I had descended,' &c.

(g) Second Perfect (Viśeshabhūtavartmān).

Formed from the Pluperfect Participle by adding the Present of \sqrt{chha} .

Sing.

lst Pers., m,, huñ utarelo

2nd Pers., m., tuñ utarelo chhe.

3rd Pers., m., te utarelo chhe.

Plur.

ame utarelā chhīe.

tame utarelā chho.

teo utarelā chhe.

The Fem. and Neut. are formed by changing the terminations of the Participle as above in (e).

Meaning — 'I am in-the-state-of-having-descended;' i.e., 'I have descended,' &c.

(h) Second Pluperfect Tense (Dvitvaviśeshabhūtavartmān*).

Formed as the Second Perfect, substituting hato, &c., for chhuñ.

^{*} When expressing in language strong, if not courteous, his admiration (?) for these ponderous names (the analysis of which is, however, easy), I trust the student will remember that I am not guilty of inventing them. They may help him if he is reading with a native Pandit.

1st, 2nd and 3rd Person.

Sing. Plur.
m., huñ, &c., utarelo hato. ame, &c., utarelā hatā.

The Fem. and Neut. are formed quite regularly, by the usual change of gender.

Meaning-'I had descended,' &c.

§ 7. Subjunctive Mood (Sanśayārth or Sanketārth).

For each of the above eight Compound Tenses in the Indicative, there is a corresponding tense in the Subjunctive. The formation of these is very easily understood. It consists in putting the Aorist of $hovu\tilde{n}$ wherever the Present of \sqrt{chha} occurs in these Indicative tenses (except in the Present, which see), and the Past Subjunctive of $hovu\tilde{n}$ wherever hato is found in them. We have therefore:—

- 2. Imperfect , , hot, &c.
- 3. Future Gerundial . . ,, utarvano houn, &c.
- 4. Past Gerundial . . . , , hot, &c.
- 5. Present Perfect. . . , utaryo houn, &c.
- 6 Pluperfect , , , hot, &c.
- 7. Second Perfect . . . , utarelo houñ, &c.
- 8. Second Pluperfect . . ,, hot, &c.

§ 8. Use of Tenses.

The use of most of the Tenses is quite evident from their

meanings, as already given. A few, however, are used in more than one acceptation, and need perhaps a few words of explanation.

1. The Aorist is so called because of its indefiniteness. It is very much more 'unlimited' in its use than is the tense in Greek, from whence the English word is derived. Generally, the Gujarātī Aorist means may, as Huñ āvuñ, 'I may come.' It also asks a question, in which we would translate it by the form of the English Future, as Huñ nikluñ śuñ? 'Shall I' or 'May I go out?' It moreover implies a wish; and, when (as frequently) followed by to or some similar particle, may be translated by the subjunctive with if; as, Te jāy, to huñ āvīś, 'If he go, then I shall come.'

But it very frequently, especially in the historical style, has a past sense, generally meaning 'used to,' and denoting a state of things continuing for some time, or more frequently a regularly repeated action. In this case some past tense before the Aorist shows that it has this sense. E.g., in the following sentences, in which the Past Indefinites, which precede, fix the meaning of the Aorists:—

E adhikārīo rājāne sārū khedutpāsethī vaje vasūl kartā, vepārīpāsethī mālupar jakāt letā Rājā sarvupar uparīpaņun rākhīne prajāno insāf kare; khūn kare, tene śūlīe chadāve; ane chornān kāndān kāpe, pan halkā gunhā karnārpāsethī dandaj le. 'These officials used to collect, on the king's behalf, the revenue from the husbandmen, exact custom-dues from the traders The king, retaining the oversight over all, did (i.e. used to do) justice

towards his subjects; (if any one) committed murder, he would hang him on a stake (impale him), and he used to cut off the hands of thieves at the wrist; moreover, he exacted a fine from those who committed slight offences.'

- 2. The Past Indefinite might also be called the Continuative, since its general use is to show a long continued action. This also is well exemplified in the above sentence.
- 3. The Neut. sing. of the Past and Pluperfect Participles are often used as nouns; as, tāruñ kaheluñ (or kahyuñ) sāruñ chhe, 'what thou hast said (thy saying) is good.'
- 4. The Connective Participle is like our Part. in 'having;' as, Rājā tene joīne niklī gayo, 'the king, having seen him, went out.' When two finite verbs are in English connected by 'and,' the first of them is often expressed by this Participle in Gujarātī, the conjunction being omitted.

§ 9. Negatives attached to Verbs.

It is convenient to treat these Adverbs here. The Negatives in Gujarātī are $-M\bar{a}\bar{n}$, $n\bar{a}$, na, $nath\bar{i}$, and $nah\bar{i}$ (also written $nah\bar{i}\bar{n}$).

 $M\bar{a}\tilde{n}$ or $m\bar{a}$ is prohibitive, and is used after the Imperative Present and Future; as, $B\bar{\imath}ho\ m\bar{a}$, 'fear ye not.'

 $N\tilde{a} = \text{our 'No,'}$ in answering a question in the negative. (But $n\tilde{a}$ kehev \tilde{i} is 'to refuse.')

Na is prefixed to the Aorist and 2nd Future; also to the Past Tense of $hovu\tilde{n}$, in which case the two words are written as one, and na + hato becomes nahoto very frequently, though not necessarily.

Nathī is used as the negative of chhuñ, chhe, &c. It is used only with the Pres. and Pres. Perf., and then changes the verb in the way shown in the annexed examples: e.g., te vānche chhe, 'he is reading;' te vānchto nathī, 'he is not reading:' tame chālyā chho, 'you have walked;' tame chālyā nathī, 'you have not walked.'

Nahi may be used everywhere except in the Present and Present Perfect tenses, and generally follows the verb. When prefixed it gives particular emphasis, and often gives to the Aorist a future negative signification. In the same way nathī may be prefixed in the Present and Present Perfect tenses to strengthen the negative; as, huñ ā vinantī karuñ chhuñ, 'I make this request;' huñ ā vinantī nathī karto, 'I do not make this request;' Koīno vināś nathī thayo, 'No one at all has perished.'

§ 10. The Transitive Verb.

This is conjugated exactly according to the model given under Intransitives, except that (with a few exceptions)*

Advuñ, to impede. Adakvuñ, to touch. Bahadvuñ.

 $\left. \begin{array}{c} Babadvu\tilde{n}, \\ \text{or} \\ Badbadvun, \end{array} \right\}$ to prate.

Bhanvuñ, to learn. Bhulvuñ, to forget. Bhetvuñ, to embrace. Bolvuñ, to say.

Chūkvun, to say.

Jītvuñ, to conquer.
Jamvuñ, to eat.
Lāvuñ, to bring.
Maļvuñ, to get.
Pāmvuň, to gain.
Samajvuň, to understand.
Sīkhvuň, to learn.
Vadvuň, to adore.
Valagvuň, to embrace.

These verbs, though transitive, retain the Subject in the Absolute form.

^{*} The principal of which are:-

the Subject of the verb, in the Preterite and all tenses formed from it, is put in the Agential form, i.e. has the postposition -e attached to its oblique state. In these tenses the verb agrees in gender and number with the logical object, and in case too, unless the object be governed by the postposition -ne.

Taking as our example, therefore, the verb Rākhvuñ, 'to keep,' we have in these tenses:—

(a) Preterite.

Sing.	Plur.
1st Pers., men rākhyun, I	ame rākhyuñ, we kept.
kept.	
2nd Pers., teñ rākhyuñ, thou	tame rākhyuñ, you kept.
kept.	
3rd Pers., teņe rākhyuñ, he	teoe rākhyun, they kept.
kept.	

Example:—Tene nagar vasāvyuñ, 'He built a city' (or literally, 'He caused a city to be inhabited').

The Past Participle in Transitive Verbs has really a Passive signification, and we might perhaps understand the construction better if we rendered the sentence, 'The city was built by him.' But the form of this Participle, agreeing as it does with that of Intransitive Verbs, and differing from that of all formations from the Passive Stem (vide § 12, p. 67), as well as the fact that the Agential form of a noun or pronoun cannot be used with the passive,—all this compels us to call this and similar tenses active.

The Subject of the Verb in this construction is put in the oblique form, and has the postposition -e attached to it. The Object is generally (unless when at a distance from the verb) in the Absolute form if it denotes a thing: if it implies a living creature, but not a person, it frequently remains in the Absolute form, but not uncommonly is put in the Oblique with -ne: if it is the proper or common name of a person, the Object is usually in the Oblique form with -ne attached. As the postposition -ne also denotes the indirect object, in some sentences it occurs with both meanings.

A study of the following examples will probably make the practical application of this clear.

(1) Verb agreeing with object in gender, number and case:—

E bāie vagadāmān dahādā kahādyā, 'That lady passed her days in the wilderness.' Here kahādyā is Absolute, $pl.\ m.$, to agree with dahādā.

Again:—E nagarmā \tilde{n} teņe $r\tilde{a}jdh\bar{a}n\tilde{\imath}$ $kar\tilde{\imath}$, 'In that city he fixed the seat of government.' Here the verb $kar\tilde{\imath}$ is f., to agree with the logical object $r\tilde{a}jdh\bar{a}n\tilde{\imath}$, which is Abs., sing. fem.

(2) Verb agreeing in gender and number with the object, but not in case:—

Tene e rājāe pakadyo, 'That king seized him.' Here pakadyo is masc. sing., to agree with tene, 'him,' but is in the Absolute, while tene is in the Oblique form with -ne.

Again:-Tene Ranine ranman nasadi mūki, 'He removed

the queen into a forest.' Here the verb $m\bar{u}k\bar{\iota}$ (the finite portion of the compound) is in the fem. sing., agreeing with the object $R\bar{u}n\bar{\iota}$ in this, though not in case, as $R\bar{u}n\bar{\iota}$ is in the oblique with -ne.

(3) Verb in neuter impersonal, the object being a sentence:—

Rajāe vichāryuñ ke have to vakhat āvyo, 'The king thought that now the time was come.' Here the sentence Have to vakhat āvyo is the real object, and it is treated as a neuter.

(b) Present Perfect.

Sing.

1st Pers., meñ rākhyuñ chhe, I have kept.

2nd Pers., ten rākhyun chhe, thou hast kept.

3rd Pers., tene rākhyun chhe, he has kept. Plur.

ame rākhyuñ chhe, we have kept.

tame rākhyuñ chhe, you have kept.

teoe rākhyuñ chhe, they have kept.

The construction is exactly similar to that just explained.

(c) Pluperfect.

Sing.

1st Pers., meñ rākhyuñ hatuñ, I had kept.

2nd Pers., teñ rākhyuñ hatuñ, thou hadst kept.

3rd Pers., tene rākhyuñ hatuñ, he had kept. Plur.

ame rākhyuñ hatuñ, we had kept.

tame rākhyuñ hatuñ, you had kept.

teoe rākhyuñ hatuñ, they had kept.

§ 11. Irregular Verbs.

The Irregular Verbs in Gujarātī are very few indeed, and the only irregularities in even these that really need attention are in the formation of the Past Participle (including the tenses formed from it). The following list contains all such verbs:—

Infinitive.	Past Participle.	Pluperf. Part.
Besvun, to sit	betho, -ī, -uñ	bethel-o, -ī, -uñ.
Bīhīvuñ, to fear .	$b\bar{\imath}ny$ -o,- $\bar{\imath}$,- $un\left(\&b\bar{\imath}dho\right)$	$b\bar{\imath}nel$ -o, $-\bar{\imath}$, $-u\bar{n}$.
Dekhvuñ, to see	ditho, &c	dīţhelo, &c.
Devuñ,* to give . (Conn. Part. daīne.)	dīdho, &c	dīdhelo, &c.
Hovuñ, to be	hato, &c	
Javuñ, to go (Conn. Part. jaīne.)	gayo, gaī, gayuñ† .	gayelo, &c.
Karvuñ, to do	kīdho, &c. (or regular)	kīdhelo (or reg.).
Khāvuñ, to eat	khādho, &c	khādhelo, &c.
Levuñ, to take (Conn. Part. laine.)	līdho, &c	līdhelo, &c.
Marvuñ, to die	muo, &c	muelo (or reg.).
Nāsvun, to flee	nāṭho, &c	nāṭhelo, &c.
Pesvuñ, to rush in .	petho, &c	pețhelo, &c.
Pīvun, to drink	pīdho, &c	pīdhelo, &c.
Suvuñ, to sleep	suto, &c	suelo, &c.

^{*} Fut. huñ daīś, &c.

[†] But,) te jayā kare chhe, 'he is accustomed to go:' see Frequentatives (p. 76, II., 1).

More trifling irregularities occur in the agrist of certain verbs, of which the stems end in vowels.

- (1) If the stem end in $-\bar{a}$, the termination -e added after it becomes changed into -y; as, thavu \bar{n} , to become, 3rd Sing. Aor. thay (for thae).
- (2) If the stem ends in -e, the -e when added coalesces with it, as levuñ, to take, 3rd Sing. Aor. le (for le-e). Before the termination -o, the -e of the stem may remain, or it may be omitted, or again, it may become y; as, leo, lo, or lyo, '(you) may take.'
- (3) If the stem ends in $-\bar{\imath}$, the termination of the 1st Plur. Aor. loses its $\bar{\imath}$, and so we have ame $p\bar{\imath}e$ (for ame $p\bar{\imath}\bar{\imath}e$), 'we drink,' from $p\bar{\imath}vu\bar{\imath}$.
- (4) If the stem ends in -o, this vowel becomes -u before the terminations -e and -o; as, jovuñ, 'to see;' te jue, tame juo (instead of joe and joo), 'he sees,' 'you see.' Hovuñ, 'to be,' and kohovuñ, 'to be rotten,' make hoy and kohoy respectively. (The Pluperf. Part. of the latter verb is kohelo, &c.

The slight irregularities of the following verbs will be observed from their paradigms:—

(a) Thavun, 'to become.' The stem is thā.

Aorist.

Sing.	Plur.	Future.
1st Pers., thauñ or thauñ	thaie	thaiś, thaśe, &c.
2nd Pers., thay	$thar{a}o$	
3rd Pers., thāy	$th\bar{a}y$	

(b) Javuñ, 'to go.' Stem, jā.

Aorist.

Sing.	Plur.	Future.
1st Pers., jāuñ	jaīe	jaīś, jaśe, &c.
2nd Pers., jāy	jāo	
3rd Pers., jāy	jāy	

(c) The Defective Joie, 'it is needful.'

Aorist, both numbers, all persons, joīe.
Fut. ,, ,, joīśe.
Past Subj. ,, ,, joīyat.
Pres. Part., joīt-o, -i, -uñ, &c.
Imperfect, joīto hato, &c.

The construction of sentences with this verb is as in the example, ' $M\bar{a}re\ \bar{a}\ chopd\bar{\imath}\ jo\bar{\imath}e$,' = 'I want this book,' or 'This book is needful to me.'

(d) Kahevuñ or Kehevuñ, &c.

Kehevuñ, 'to say;' and Rehevuñ, or Rahevuñ, 'to remain,' make in the Aorist Kehe and Rehe &c. respectively, and in the Past Part. Kahyo &c. and Ruhyo &c.

It should also be noticed that, if the stem of a verb ends in s, this letter is changed to ś (A to A) whenever it is followed by $\bar{\imath}$ or y; as, besvuñ, 'to sit,' Conn. Part. beśīne; vasvuñ, 'to dwell,' Past Part. vaśyo; nāsvuñ, 'to flee,' Conn. Part. nāśīne (though nāsīne is also found), &c.

§ 12. Passive Voice (Sakyabhed or Sahyabhed).

The general rule for the formation of the Passive is to add -ā to the stem of the Active to form the Passive stem, and then attach to the new stem thus produced the same terminations as are employed in the Active. E.g., lakhvuñ, 'to write,' Active stem, lakh; Passive stem, lakh-ā: 1st Pers. Sing. Aorist Passive, lakhāuñ, &c.

But for the sake of euphony, and to secure ease in articulation, this rule undergoes a few slight modifications in certain instances:—

- (1) If the vowel \bar{a} occur in the ultimate or penultimate syllable of the Active stem, this long vowel is shortened into \check{a} before the addition of the Passive stem-affix $-\bar{a}$; as, $V\bar{a}par-vu\tilde{n}$, 'to use;' Passive stem, $v\check{a}par\bar{a}$.
- (2) If the stem of the Active end in a vowel, or in h preceded by a vowel, the syllable $-v\bar{a}$ is added, instead of merely $-\bar{a}$, to form the Passive stem; as, $p\bar{\imath}-vu\tilde{n}$, 'to drink,' stem $p\bar{\imath}-$; Passive stem $p\bar{\imath}v\bar{a}-$. If, however, the final vowel of the Active stem be $-\bar{a}$, this is shortened (in agreement with Rule 1) before the addition of the $v\bar{a}$; as, $g\bar{a}vu\tilde{n}$, 'to sing,' Active stem $g\bar{a}$, Passive stem $g\bar{a}v\bar{a}$.

The logical subject of Passive verbs, i.e. the doer of the action implied by them, is put in the oblique case followed by -thī (NEVER in the oblique followed by -e); as, Rājāthī e kām karāyuñ, 'that work was done by the Rājā.'

I.—Passive of the Transitive Verb.

Infinitive Act. Dekhvuñ, 'to see;' Stem, Act. Dekh-.

Aorist.

Sing.

1st Pers., huñ dekhāuñ, I may seem, or may be seen. 2nd Pers., tuñ dekhāy,* &c. 3rd Pers., te dekhāy, * &c. | teo dekhāy, * &c.

Plur ame dekhāie, we may seem, or may be seen. tame dekhāo, &c.

Present.

Sing. Plur.
1st Pers., huñ dekhāuñ ame dekhāie chhie, &c. chhuñ, &c.

Future.

Sing.

1st Pers., huñ dekhāīś.
2nd Pers., tuň dekhāśe or dekhāīś, &c.

Preterite.—1st, 2nd, 3rd Pers.

n., dekhāyuñ.

Sing.

M., dekhāyo; f., dekhāi; dekhāyā, dekhājañ.

n., dekhāyuñ.

^{*} See above, § 5, p. 52, no. (2), and note; also p. 65, (1).

Infinitive . . . dekhāvuñ.

Past Part. . . . dekhā-yo, -ī, -yuñ.*

Present Part. . . dekhāt-o, -ī, uñ.

Agential Part. . dekhānār-o, -ī, -uñ; and indeel., dekhānār.

Gerundive . . . dekhāv-o, -ī, -uñ.

Pluperf. Part. . . dekhāyel-o, -ī, -uñ or dekhāel-o,

-ī, -uñ.+

Connective Part. dekhāīne, dekhāī.

It is unnecessary to give paradigms of all the tenses at length, as their formation will now be readily understood.

Instead of the Preterite Passive, one of two circumlocutions may be used. (1) The Past Participle of the
Active, followed by the Preterite of javun, 'to go;' as,
te marāyo or te māryo gayo, 'he was killed' or 'struck.'
(2) The Oblique Infinitive with mān, followed by the
Present or Past, &c., of the verb āvavun, 'to come;' as,
E vastu jovāmān āvī, 'that thing was seen,'—literally,
came into seeing. This latter construction may be used
with all tenses; as, Ā vāt kehevāmān āvše, 'this story
will be told.' It is very frequently met with in PārsīGujarātī,

§ 13. II. Passive of the Intransitive Verb.

Intransitive verbs are not unfrequently used in the

^{*} Dialectically dekhānuñ. This form (m. no, f. nī, neut. nuñ) is also used in the Preterite.

[†] As in the Active, the indeclinable form (dekhāel) is also used.

passive voice. This will not appear strange to the classical student who has, in his boyhood, had his ambition roused, let us hope, by such phrases as, "Sic itur ad astra." As in Latin, however, the Intransitive Verb exists in the Passive only in the third person singular. With this exception, the Intransitive Verb forms its Passive just as does the Transitive. E.g.—

(Act. Infin., Āvavuñ, 'to come;')
Pass. Infin., Āvāvuñ.

Aorist Āvāy.

Present . . . Āvāy chhe.

Present Participle . Āvā-to, -tī, -tuñ.

Past Participle . . Āvā-yo, -ī, -yuñ.

Future Āvāśe.

Pluperf. Participle . Āvāel-o, -ī, -uñ.

Agent. Participle . Āvānār-o, -ī, -uñ, &c., &c.

(This verb does not shorten the \bar{a} of the Active stem.)

Of course some of these tenses and forms are very rarely used. The tense of most frequent occurrence is the Preterite.

The Passive of Intransitives has generally, especially in the negative, the idea of possibility or the reverse; as, mārāthī javāyuñ nahi, 'It was not gone by me,' = 'I could not go.' But this meaning is also frequent with the passive of Transitives also.

O Sometimes also the negative passive implies that a thing

ought not to be; as, Evuñ kuhevāy nahi, = 'one should not say so.'

§ 14. The Causative Verb (Prekarbhed).

The Causative Verb is very common in Gujarātī, as it is in every Indian language of Sanskrit origin. Its meaning and use may be illustrated from the scanty remains in our own language of similar forms. For instance, from 'to sit,' we form the Causative 'to set,' i.e. 'to cause to sit;' from 'to fall,' the Causative is 'to fell,' i.e. 'to cause to fall;' from 'to rise,' we have the Causative 'to raise.' So in Gujarātī, from besvuñ, 'to sit,' comes besādvuñ, 'to cause to sit;' from lakhvuñ, 'to write,' we have lakhāvavuñ, 'to cause to write,' 'to dictate.'

The rules for the formation of the Causative stem (for, when the stem is known, we conjugate the verb quite regularly) are the following:—

(1) If the stem of the simple verb is *intransitive* and monosyllabic, and if its vowel is \check{a} , two causatives may be formed from it: one by lengthening the \check{a} into \bar{a} —this merely renders the verb transitive: the other by adding the termination $-\bar{a}va$.*

^{*} The final \check{a} is, native grammarians would say, existent at the end of the stem of the simple verb too in the infin., and before all consonantal endings except those of the Past Participle. According to them we should have $lakhavu\~n$, lakhato, &c. But, while omitting the a in such cases, I have inserted it here, because it is audible between the two v's of the Caus. Infin.

E.g., vaļ-vuñ, st. vaļ, 'to turn,' intr.: 1st Caus. vāļvuñ, 'to bend,' trans.; 2nd Caus. vaļāva-vuň, 'to cause to turn.'

If such a verb is originally transitive, it takes only the second form of the Causative; as, lakh-vuñ, 'to write;' lakhāvavuñ, 'to cause to write.'

- (2) If the stem of the simple verb have in its last syllable the vowel \bar{a} , this is shortened to a before the causative affix, which is frequently in such cases $-\bar{a}va$, but may also be $\bar{a}d$; as, $j\bar{a}n$ - $vu\bar{n}$, 'to know;' $jan\bar{a}va$ - $vu\bar{n}$, 'to cause to know;' $ch\bar{a}kh$ - $vu\bar{n}$, 'to taste;' $chakh\bar{u}d$ - $vu\bar{n}$, 'to cause to taste.'
- (3) If the stem of the simple verb has any vowel except a or ā in its last syllable, its Causative is usually formed by adding -ād, but sometimes -varāva or -āva. The first of these terminations becomes -vād when the last letter of the stem is a vowel. E.g., besvuñ, 'to sit,' caus. besādvuñ; le-vuñ, 'to take,' caus. levād-vuñ or levarāva-vuñ.*

From some causatives a second causative may be formed by reduplicating the causative ending and observing rule (2) above; as, $kar-vu\tilde{n}$, 'to do,' caus. $kar\bar{a}va-vu\tilde{n}$, 'to cause to do;' 2nd caus. $karav\bar{a}va-vu\tilde{n}$ [i.e., $kar + \bar{a}va$

^{*} This last term. $-var\bar{a}va$ is really a double causative, i.e. it is composed of $-v\bar{a}d$ (with the d changed to r) + the term. $-\bar{a}va$, the \bar{a} of the former being shortened by rule (2) above. The term. $-\bar{a}d$ is the same which sometimes occurs as $-l\bar{a}$ in Urdu ($bithl\bar{a}n\bar{a}$ for $bith\bar{a}n\bar{a}$), and as $-\bar{a}l$ or $-\bar{a}l$ in Panjābī ($bith\bar{a}ln\bar{a}$).

 $+ \tilde{a}va + vu\tilde{n}$ with the first long \tilde{a} shortened by rule (2)]. Such forms are, however, rarely used.

The Passive of Causatives is formed regularly, in accordance with the rule already given; as, $tap\bar{a}vavu\tilde{n}$, 'to cause to warm;' Passive, $tap\bar{a}v\bar{a}vu\tilde{n}$.

§ 15. Irregular Causatives.

Simple Stem.	Caus. Stem.		
ad- (to impede)	aḍāḍ-		
bha!- (to be mixed) .	bhelav(a)-		
far- (to turn, intr.) .	ferav(a)-		
mal- (to meet, be got)	me!av(a)-		
pī- (to drink)	pā-		
thar- (to be fixed) .	tharāv(a)-, $therav(a)$ -		

uchhar- (to grow up) . uchharāv(a)-, uchherāv(a)-

§ 16. The Compound Verb (Sanyukta Kriyāpad).

Compound Verbs, that is verbs compounded of two simple verbs, play an important part in Gujarātī, as in most other Indian languages of the Sanskrit stock. They may be said to supply the place of verbs compounded with prepositions in Latin and Greek, or that of such particles as on, down, away, united to verbs in English. We may divide Compound Verbs into two classes:—(1) those properly so called, and (2) those less entitled to the appellation.

I .- True Compounds.

In these the two verbs are so united as to convey but

one idea. The signification of the second part of the compound is practically lost, but its use strengthens that of the first portion. The compound is formed by taking the shortened form of the Connective Participle* of the first verb and attaching to it one of the following auxiliaries,—nānkhvun, devun, āpvun, javun, padvun, pādvun, śakvun, chukvun, rehevun, kādhvun, levun, āvavun, valvun, vālvun,—according to the sense required to be expressed. They may be tabulated in the following manuer:—

- 1. Potential.—Formed by attaching śakvuñ to the shortened Connective Participle; as, lakhvuñ, 'to write,' Conn. Part., lakhī-ne; Compound, lakhī śakvuñ, 'to be able to write.' So also jovuñ, 'to see;' joī śakvuñ, 'to be able to see,' &c. E.g., te nāno chhokro vānchī śake chhe śuñ?' Can that little boy read?' Śakvuñ may be used in the passive when necessary; as, Temthī pāchhuñ āvī śakāyuñ nahi, 'they could not return.'
- 2. Completive.—Formed by adding chukvuñ, 'to finish,' to the same part of the principal verb; as, khāvuñ, 'to eat;' khāī chukvuñ, 'to finish eating;' samjāvavuñ, 'to cause to understand;' samjāī chukvuñ, 'to finish explaining.' E.g., māro kutro te māñs khāī chukyo chhe, 'my dog has finished eating that meat.'
- 3. Intensitive.—These are formed in the same way as the preceding, but the second part of the compound may

^{*} As in Braj Bhāshā and Western Panjābī, not the stem of the verb as in Hindī.

be devuñ, āpvuñ, nāñkhvuñ, kāḍhvuñ, vāļvuñ, pāḍvuñ, levuñ, as the meaning to be expressed may require. For example, mārvuñ is 'to strike,' but mārī nāñkhvuñ (Urdū Ulū) is 'to strike down,' i.e. 'to kill;' pāvuñ, 'to cause to drink;' pāī devuñ, 'to give to drink;' mūkvuñ, 'to put;' mūkī nāñkhvuñ, 'to put down at once,' 'throw down,' &c. When devuñ or āpvuñ are used in the second part of such compounds, the idea of doing something for some one, doing a kindness to some one, is generally implied. When levuñ is used, the sense of taking for one's own advantage is understood in English; as, Te bādśāh Hindustān Jītī Levāne āvyo, 'That king came to conquer (and take possession of) India.'

Similar compounds are formed with intransitive as well as transitive auxiliaries. For example, Te rānī rogī thaī gaī chhe, 'That queen has become ill;' Tāro ghodo sagļuñ pānī pī gayo, 'Thy horse drank up all the water.' (The idea underlying such compounds will be best seen by translating idiomatically thus, 'That queen has gone and got ill;' 'thy horse has gone and drunk all the water.) The use of āvavuñ is somewhat similar; as, Te chopḍī lakhāvī āvo, 'having caused that book to be written, come.'

II .- False Compounds.

These are of various kinds, but the most important are those mentioned below. They cannot be regarded as true compounds, because the two verbs do not become one in meaning as in the examples given above.

- 1. Frequentatives.—Formed by affixing karvuñ, 'to make,' 'to do,' to the oblique form of the Past Participle,* as in Urdū. The latter remains unchanged throughout, while the auxiliary is conjugated in the usual manner. Example:—bolyā karvuñ, 'to be in the habit of speaking;' māryā karvuñ, 'to be in the habit of beating.' E.g., Te mehetājī sadā chhokrāone bhaṇāvyā kare chhe, 'That schoolmaster is always in the habit of teaching the boys.'
- 2. Continuatives.—Formed by adding to the Present Participle of any verb any part of the verbs javuñ, āvavuñ, or rehevuñ, as the case may be; as, bolto (m., -i f., -uñ n.) rehevuñ, 'to keep on talking;' vānchto (-i, -uñ) āvavuñ, 'to come along reading:' as, Ā sansār jatō rahe chhe, 'this world is passing away;' Te chālto jāy chhe, 'he is going off.'

^{*} In reality the form used is an indeclinable gerund, but for convenience the above method of describing it may be permitted.

CHAPTER VI.

INDECLINABLES (Avyay).

In Gujarātī, Adverbs, Postpositions, Conjunctions and Interjections do not admit of declension.

§ 1. I. Adverbs (Kriyāviśeshan).

The adverb, as a general rule, precedes the word which it qualifies; as, Te māṇas ihāñ rahe chhe, 'that man dwells here.'

As in German, any adjective may become an adverb in use, i.e. may be used adverbially, but in such cases it generally agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case, if it belongs to the class of Adjectives which admit (Cap. III., § 1) of declension. Example:—A chhokro sāro vānche chhe, pan tenī behen sārī vānchtī nathī, 'This boy reads well, but his sister does not read well.' Occasionally, however, the adjective in such sentences is put in the absolute singular neuter and is used as an ordinary adverb.

From the Pronouns \bar{A} , E, Je, Te, Ke, Adverbs are formed denoting manner, place and time, in the following way:—

 $ar{A}$, This. $ar{a}m$, in this way. $\{a \bar{n} \bar{h} i, here.$ $ar{a}j$, to-day. E, That. em, thus. $\{a \bar{h} \bar{i} \bar{n}, hy \bar{a} \bar{n}, here.$ $aty \bar{a}re$, then. Je, Who. jem, jyam, in $jy \bar{a} \bar{n}$, where. $jy \bar{a}re$, when. which way.

Te, That. tem, tyam, thus. $ty\bar{a}\tilde{n}$, there. $ty\bar{a}re$, then. Ke, Who? kyam, kem, how? $ky\bar{a}\tilde{n}$, where? $ky\bar{a}re$, when?

Others formed from the same Pronouns are:— $T\bar{a}\tilde{n}h\bar{a}\tilde{n}$, $Tah\bar{i}\tilde{n}$, 'there;' $K\bar{a}\tilde{n}h\bar{a}\tilde{n}$, $Kah\bar{i}\tilde{n}$, 'where?' &c.

Such adverbs, and more especially those of place and time, are often governed by the postposition -no, m.; -nī, f.; -nuñ, n., and the compound thus formed is used as a declinable adjective; e.g., Teo tyānnā lokomān maļī gayā, 'They mingled among the people (of there) of that place.' [Cf. οἱ νῦν ἄνθρωποι, ὁ ἀεὶ βασιλεύς, in Greek, and in English, 'The then King of France made a decree.']

§ 2. Adverbs, like Adjectives in Gujarātī, do not undergo any change to express the Comparative and Superlative degrees, but these are denoted in the same way as with adjectives.

'The more . . . the more' (Latin, tanto . . . quanto; eo . . . quo) is expressed by Jem jem . . . tem tem; as, Jem jem nīche utartā jaīe, tem tem jhādī vadhāre āvatī jāy chhe, 'The farther down one goes (we go), the more abundant does the brushwood become.'

The word karīne, Connective Participle of the verb karvuñ, 'to do,' is often used in an adverbial sense; as, ghanuñ karīne, 'often;' teņe karīne, 'therefore;' hāthe

karīne, 'manually,' 'by hand.' The following use of the word may conveniently be inserted here:—Teno pahelo rājā Vikrām karīne thaī gayo, 'Its first king was called Vikrām.' Te deśne hamnā Malabār karīne kahe chhe, 'That country they now name Malabar.'

Foreign (chiefly Arabic and Persian) phrases are, in a corrupted form, introduced into Gujarātī, and there treated as simple adverbs; as, belāśak (بلا شَكَ), 'doubtless;' bīngunhe (إبى گذاه), 'sinlessly.'

§ 3. I may be allowed in this place to notice a somewhat curious usage of the negative adverb nahi. It is well exemplified in the following sentence:—Panjāb deśnā lokonā satyaguṇnī vāt temnā granthomānthīj mālūm pade chhe,—eṭlunj nahi, pan bījā deśonā loko te deśnī śobhā jovā sārun āvatā hatā,—'The report of the excellence of the people of the country of the Panjāb is known not from their own books (lit. falls known through their books,—not so, but), but [from the accounts of] people of other lands [who] used to come for the sake of seeing the beauty of that region.' Sentences similar to this in their use of the negative—asserting a thing for the purpose of strongly contradicting the assertion immediately after and thus strengthening the negative—are common.

The adverb jyāre, 'when,' is frequently and elegantly omitted (vide under Conjunctions); as, te rājā marī gayo, tyāre tenā bhāīe rāj kīdhuñ, 'When that king died, then his brother reigned.'

§ 4. II. Postpositions (Nāmyogī).

Except the simple and genuine Postpositions, -ne, -e, -thī, -thakī, -vatī, -no -nī -nuñ, -māñ, all the rest were originally nouns in the locative case. In consequence of this they (1) possess gender, and (2) require the oblique case of -no, -nī, -nuñ, to interpose between them and the noun they govern. Frequently, however, this possessive postposition may be omitted, though when not expressed it is understood. E.g., sāthe, 'along with;' te sipāī-nī sāthe, 'along with that sepoy;' ā rīti-nī pramāņe, or ā rīti pramāņe, 'according to this method.'

The gender of some postpositions varies in different parts of Gujarāt.

The subjoined lists will show which of the Postpositions require $-n\bar{a}$ (m. and n. obl. of -no) before them, which $-n\bar{\iota}$ (f.), and which -ne (m. and n. locative of -no). If the same postposition occurs in more than one list, it will show that both usages are allowable.

Requiring -nā.

kartāñ	sot	$sudh \bar{i}$	vishe	lagan
vade	suddhāñ	sarkhuñ	vate	par
vanā	samet	maļīne	vagar	upar
$vinar{a}$	$samar{\imath}p$	śivāy	$lag\bar{\imath}$	haste
sahit	$sambandh\bar{\imath}$			

Requiring -nī.

agāu	$p\bar{a}se$	sāmuñ	mārafat	sāme
$ag\bar{a}d\bar{\imath}$	pețhe	$sar{a}mar{a}ar{n}$	$mar{a}fak$	$sar{a}kshar{a}t$
ārpār	$pachh\bar{\imath}$	$s\bar{a}the$	pramāņe	sanmukh
āgaļ	pār	hastak	hethe	chotaraf
andar	pūthal	haste	hethal	fartuñ
āspās	$p\bar{u}$ the	$b\bar{a}bat$	$n\bar{\imath}che$	vachmāñ
kane	pahelāñ	bahār	tale	mahīñ
gode	mele	$bhanar{\imath}$	gam	māñhe
jode	vachche	$bar\bar{a}bar$	mer	madhye
pachhvāde	$v \tilde{a} \tilde{n} s e$	uparānt	taraf	vānsal
pāchhaļ	sāmo (adj.)	sangāte		

Requiring -ne.

kāje māțe līdhe vāste sāru(ñ) badle kāraņe

§ 5. Several postpositions are often affixed together to a noun, as in the following sentences:—(1) Te gharmānthī koī āvśe nahi, 'From that house (lit. from in that house) no one will come;' Ā deśmānnā loko rogī chhe, 'The people of (of in) that country are ill;' E jhādparthī mevo laā āvo, 'Bring fruit from off (lit. 'from on') that tree.' Sometimes the long words thus formed look quite formidable, but they will be found easy to resolve into their component parts. E.g., Paśchimbhaṇnā baļvān deśomān temnī dolatvishe bahu vāto chāltī, 'Many stories were current in powerful western lands regarding their wealth.' The first word in this sentence is thus compounded, Paśchim, 'the

west; 'bhaṇī, 'direction,' 'towards,' and nā, pl. obl. of no, agreeing with deśo. It might have been even longer, Puśchimnībhaṇīnā. Sometimes such compounds of a noun and a postposition receive the adjectival [cap. viii., § 1, p. 92 (o)], termination -lo, -lī, -luñ; as, Pachhī Yūropkhanḍmāñhelā Yūnāndeśno Sikandar bādśāh śumāre savā be hajār varaspar Hindustān jītī levāne āvyo, 'Formerly, two-and-a-quarter thousand years ago in number, Alexander, king of the land-of-Greece, which-is-in-the-continent-of-Europe—lit. king of the Europe-continent-within-(adj. term.) Greece-land—came to conquer India.'

In a sentence denoting motion to a place, there is no postposition required; as, Te ghar gayo, 'he went to the house.' If the noun denoting the place to which motion occurs ends in a consonant, in -o or in -\bar{\epsilon}, its form undergoes no alteration; but if it end in -\bar{\alpha} or -u, these terminations are changed to -e; as, Te loko Khand\bar{a}le gay\bar{\alpha} chhe, 'those people have gone to Khand\bar{a}la.'

§ 6. Use of the simple Postpositions.

The simple or *proper* Postpositions, besides their general and obvious uses, which require no remark, are employed idiomatically in some instances, as will be seen from the examples given below.

(1) -No $(-n\bar{\imath}, -nu\bar{\imath})$ often denotes the material of which a thing is composed; e.g., \bar{A} ghar $l\bar{a}kd\bar{a}$ nu \tilde{n} bandhāelu \tilde{n} chhe, 'this house is built of wood.'

It is also occasionally employed to denote the time of an

action; as, Te rājā savārno jāge chhe, 'that king awakens in the morning.' (Cf. Greek νυκτός and German Morgene.)

It is used as of in English in such phrases as Sindhno mūlak, 'the country of Sindh.'

Also in such constructions as, \bar{A} pandit buddhino chālāk chhe, 'This Pandit is quick of comprehension.'

- (2) -Thī, besides denoting from in all its meanings, also denotes than in comparison; as, Te chhokro mārā bhāīthī moto thayo, 'That boy grew bigger than my brother.' Also the instrument with which a thing is done; as, bhālāthī, 'with a spear.' Also cause through which; as, E bāidī dhūpthī rogī thaī gaī, 'That woman became ill through the heat.' Also the agent after a passive verb; as, Tenāthī e deś badho jītāyo nahi, 'All that country was not conquered by him.' It also means since; as, Tran varasthī te ā nagarmāñ vase chhe, 'He has lived in this city for the last three years.' -Thī is also used with verbs of fearing; as, Huñ rājāthī bīdho, 'I feared the king.'
- (3) $-M\bar{a}\bar{n}$, besides meaning in and into, has also the sense of on; as, Mugat tenā māthāmāñ hato, 'The crown was on his head.' The difference (when there is any) between $-m\bar{a}\bar{n}$ and -e in its locative sense is that the former means in or into and the latter at, though the latter has also the meaning of in. (In nouns of Class I., however [ch. ii., § 5, p. 32], this termination never has any but an agential meaning.)
- (4) -E.—Except in the case mentioned above, this termination has two senses, (1) a locative, and (2) an agential.

In the former instance it is doubtless derived from the Sanskrit locative, in the latter from the Sanskrit instrumental case, which in nouns of the 1st Class m. terminates in -ena (e.g., śivas, nom., śivena, loc.). Hence some Gujarātī scholars write the postposition -e as -eñ in this agential significance.

When the termination -e is locative, or denotes anything but the agential relation, if the noun to which it is attached be preceded by a declinable adjective or a noun with the postposition -no, m. (or -nuñ, n.), this is also put in the locative; as, Temne kabje, 'in their grasp;' bije varase, 'next year.'

But when the -e is agential this does not take place; as, Prabhunā dūte mane kahyuñ, 'The angel of the Lord said unto me;' Bābarne tenā bāpe bhaṇāvyo hato, 'His father had taught Bābar.'

This postposition -e has a large number of varieties of significance, some of which will be learnt from the following sentence *:—Meñ mare hathe tene mathe paghḍī bāndhī, 'I with my own hand bound the pagri on his head.' It denotes instrument, cause, measure of time, price, location, &c. When it denotes at or in it may, like māñ, be followed by -thī; as, te niśālethī nikaļyo, 'he came out of school.'

§ 7. III. Conjunctions (Vākyayogī or Ubhayānvayī).

These require little remark, though some few of them

^{*} Quoted from Taylor's 'Gujarātī Bhāshāņuñ Vyākaraņ,' p. 37, § 79.

have peculiarities of use. For instance, ke and athvā both mean 'or,' but the former is used between nouns or single words, the latter between sentences; as, $R\bar{a}j\bar{a}$ ke $r\bar{a}n\bar{i}$, 'the king or the queen;' but $Te\ \bar{a}\ k\bar{a}m\ karśe$, athvā, jo karī na śakśe, to marī jaśe, 'He will do this work, or, if he cannot, then he will die.'

Instead of ane, 'and,' the shorter form ne is often used. This latter is distinguished from the postposition of the same form by the fact that the conjunction is not attached to the preceding word in writing and does not, of course require the oblique form of the word which precedes it.

If the former of two sentences connected with one another begins with jo, 'if,' expressed or understood (for it, like jyāre, 'when,' is often understood), the latter sentence must begin with to, 'then;' as, (Jo) te āvśe, to huñ jaīś, 'If he comes, then I shall go.' So also, if the former sentence contains such a word as kadāpi, kadāchit (kadāch), 'perhaps,' the latter must begin with to, tathāpi or topaņ, 'then,' 'yet.'

Ke, 'that,' is used in quoting the words of a speaker, and is followed by the oratio recta.

§ 8. IV. Interjections (Kevalprayogī).

These require no special remark, being used in Gujarātī much as such words are in other languages. A few of the most common are:—O, e, re, are, ere, oy, alī, alyā, vāh, vhāvā, chhī, āh, hā, hāhā, he, &c.

CHAPTER VII.

NUMERALS.

The numerical signs in Gujarātī are: 9, 2, 3, 8, 4, 4, 9, 6, 4, 90, = 1, 2, 3, &c. Fractions are written thus: $-\frac{1}{4} = \text{ol}$; $\frac{1}{2} = \text{oll}$; $\frac{3}{4} = \text{olll}$; as $1\frac{1}{2} = 911$; $3\frac{3}{4} = 3111.$

er mi or i.

§ 1	. The Cardinal	s are :—	
1. e	k	18. arāḍh,aḍhār	35. pāntrīs
2. b	e	19. ogaņīs	36. chhatrīs
3. t	raņ	20. vīs	37. sādtrīs
4. c	hār	21. ekvis	38. āḍtrīs
5. p	anch	22. bāvīs	39. ogaņchāļīs
6. c	hha	23. trevīs	40. chāļīs
7. 80	$\bar{a}t$	24. chovis	41. ektāļīs
8. ā	th	25. pachīs	42. betāļīs
9. n	av	26. chhavīs	43. $t(r)et\bar{a}l\bar{i}s$
10. d	las, daś	27. sattāvīs	44. chuñvāļīs
11. a	giār	28. ațh(țh)āvīs	$(chu \tilde{n} m \tilde{a} l \tilde{i} s)$
12. b	ār)	29. ogaņvīs	45. pistāļīs
13. t	er	30. trīś, trīs	46. chhetāļīs
14. c.	haud	31. ektrīs	47. sudtāļīs
15. p	andar	32. batrīs	(saḍtāļīs)
16. 3	ol, sol	33. tetrīs	48 adtāļīs
17. s	atar, sattar	34. chotris	49. oganpachās

50. pachās 71. ikoter 89. nevāśī 51. ekāvan 72. bhoter (nevyāsī)	
52. bāvan (bohoter) 90. nevuñ	
53. trepan 73. toter 91. ekāņuñ	
54. chopan (tohoter) 92. bāņuñ	
55. panchāvan 74. chuñmoter 93. trāņuñ	
56. chappan 75. panchoter 94. chorāņuñ	
57. sattāvan 76. chhoter 95. panchāņuñ	
58. aṭhṭhāvan 77. sattoter 96. chhannuñ	
59. ogaņsāṭh (sittoter) 97. sattāņuñ	
60. sāṭh 78. aṭhṭhoter 98. aṭhṭhāṇuñ	
61. eksath, (iththoter) 99. navāņun	
eksețh 79. agnoeñśī (navyāņuñ)
62. bāsaṭh, (ogaṇyāsī) 100. son, so	
-seṭh, (&c.) 80. eñśī, heñsī 200. baseñ	
63. tresațh 81. ekāśī, 300. traņseň	
64. chosațh -āsī, (&c.) 400. chārseñ	
65. pānsaṭh 82. bāśī 500. pānchseñ	
66. chhāsaṭh 83. trāśī, tyāsī 1,000. ek hajār	
67. sadsath 84. chorāśī 2,000. be hajār	
68. adsath 85. panchāśī 100,000. lākh	
69. aganoter 86. chhāśī 1,000,000. das	
(agaṇoter) 87. sattāśī lākh	
70. siter 88. aṭhṭhāśī 10,000,000. kare	oḍ

It will be noticed that in some instances more than one form is used.

§ 2. Ordinals.—These are: 1st, pehelo, -ī, -uñ; 2nd, bījo; 3rd, trījo; 4th, chotho; 5th, pāncho; 6th, chhaṭho; 7th, sātmo; 8th, āṭhmo; the ordinals after the 6th being formed by attaching the ending -mo, -mī, -muñ, to the cardinals. The ordinals are regular declinable adjectives.

Multiplicatives.—The formation of these will be clear from the following examples:—bamanun, 'double;' tramanun, 'treble;' choganun, 'fourfold;' chhaganun, 'sixfold.' These (the forms I have given being neut.), are declined regularly; as, dasgan-o, -ī, -un, 'ten-fold,' &c. Another series is formed by adding -vadun to the cardinal; as, bevado, -ī, -un, 'double;' trevado, -ī, -un, 'triple,' &c.

Fractions.—One quarter, $p\bar{a}$; one half, addho or ardho; three quarters, $po\bar{n}o$; one and a quarter, $sav\bar{a}$; one and a half, dodh or dohod; one and three quarters, $po\bar{n}a$ be; two and a quarter, $sav\bar{a}$ be; two and a half, $adh\bar{i}$ or $had\bar{i}$; three and a quarter, $sav\bar{a}$ tran; three and a half, $s\bar{a}d\bar{a}$ tran; four and a half, $s\bar{a}d\bar{a}$ chār, &c. So also 75 may be expressed by pono so (i.e. $\frac{3}{4}$ of 100); 250 by $adh\bar{i}se\bar{n}$ ($2\frac{1}{2}$ hundreds), &c.

The addition of -e to a numeral denotes 'all'; as, tran, 'three; trane, 'all three.' 'Both' is denoted by beu, and also by bandhe and banne. Eke means 'just one.'

'And' between numerals which form part of one number is omitted in Gujarātī; as, ek soñ tran, 'one hundred and three.'

§ 3. The following are a few nouns denoting number:-

Beluñ, 'a couple.' tako, 'a triad.' chok, a number containing four. panchak, five. chhak, six. sātuñ. seven. eight. āthuñ, 99 navak, nine. · dasak. ten. ,, 22 $\left. \begin{array}{l} kot\bar{\imath}, \\ kunt\bar{\imath}, \end{array} \right\}$ sainkuñ, sekduñ, one hundred.

CHAPTER VIII.

FORMATION OF WORDS: COMPOUNDS.

- § 1. The great majority of words in the Gujarātī language are derived from the Sanskrit. It would be out of place here to explain the formation of Sanskrit compounds,—information which the student may easily obtain, if he pleases, from Monier Williams' "Sanskrit Grammar," ch. viii., sect. 1. But some words are in Gujarātī formed by certain Gujarātī affixes, the principal of which necessarily find a place here.
- (a) To denote 'state,' -paṇ or -paṇuñ is added to adjectives or nouns; as, sagpaṇ, 'relationship;' bālpaṇ, 'childhood;' uparīpaṇuñ (from uparī, 'overseer'), 'superintendence;' nādānpaṇuñ, 'ignorance.'
- (b) To the stems of some verbs and adjectives -āī is added; as, murkhāī, 'folly;' chaturāī, 'cleverness,' 'cuteness.'
- (c) The termination -ī has many meanings, as will be seen from the following examples:—rogī, 'sick' (from rog, 'disease'); ghadīāļī, 'a watchmaker' (from ghadīāļ, 'a watch, clock'); Hindustānī, 'a native of Hindustānī.'
- (d) The affix ~iyo, io, yo, aiyo, forms adjectives and nouns; as, bhūkhyo, 'hungry' (from bhūkh); bhomio, 'a guide;' gavaiyo, 'a singer.'

- (e) $\bar{A}t$, $-\bar{a}to$, -vat, -vato; as, $gamr\bar{a}t$, 'confusion;' $jha-p\bar{a}to$, 'a blast;' $s\bar{a}chvat$, 'truthfulness;' bhogvato, 'sensual pleasure.'
- (f) -Vān, -vant, denote 'possessing;' as, baļvān, 'strong;' dhanvant, 'wealthy.'
- (g) The addition of $\cdot do$, $-d\bar{\iota}$, $-du\bar{n}$, forms substantives and adjectives, originally (and still in many cases) diminutives; as, $n\bar{a}v$, 'a ship' (n. in Gujarātī, though f. in Sanskrit, Latin and Greek); $n\bar{a}vd\bar{\iota}$, 'a boat;' $n\bar{a}vdu\bar{n}$, 'a large vessel:' $lodhu\bar{n}$, 'iron;' $lodh\bar{\iota}$, 'an iron bread-pan:' $g\bar{a}mdu\bar{n}$, 'a small village.'
- (h) -Tā, -tva, form abstract nouns; as, pavitratā, 'holiness;' dāstva, 'slavery.'
- (i) $-V\bar{a}l$ denotes 'keeper;' $kotv\bar{a}l$, 'commander of a fort,' 'police-officer.'
- (j) -Vāļo, -vāļī, -vāļūñ, forms nouns and adjectives; as, vichārvāļo, 'thoughtful;' topīvāļo, 'hat-wearer (European); &c. This affix is often added to the latter of two words closely united together in a sentence; as, sonerī sājvāļā hāthīo, 'elephants with golden trappings;' māṭhā pariṇāmvāļī rūḍhīo, 'corrupt idioms.'
- (k) The usual termination added to the verbal stem to denote the 'agent' is $-n\bar{a}r$; as, bechnār, 'a seller.'
- (l) Another (Sanskrit) is ak; as, pāļak, 'supporter' (from pāļvun, 'to nourish, rear'); geṭāpāļak, 'shepherd.'
 - (m) The Persian affix $-d\bar{a}r$ ('possessor') is sometimes

added to Gujarātī words; as, vahīvaṭdār, 'officer,' 'collector' (from vahīvaṭ).

- (n) -āl, -ālo (-ī, -uñ), forms adjectives; as, rasāl, 'juicy,' 'sappy,' 'fertile' (from ras, 'juice'); retāl, 'sandy,' for ret, 'sand;' muchhālo, 'a man with a long mustachio' (from muchh, 'mustache'). So also, Sundar pīchhāļāñ pakshī, 'beautifully feathered birds.'
- (o) -!u is used somewhat similarly; as, dayāļu, 'merciful' (from dayā, 'mercy'). -Lo, -lī, -luñ, is another termination to form adjectives; as, Sindhmāñhelā loko, 'people in Sindh.'
- (p) -at and -atī added to the root of verbs form nouns; as gamat, 'amusement' (from gamvun, 'to approve of'); ganatī, 'numbering' (from ganvun, 'to count').
- (q) -nā forms a few nouns; as, sūchnā, 'a suggestion' (from sūchavavuñ, 'to suggest').
- (r) ādi is added with the meaning of etc.; as, Krishņ, Devī, Śivādi, 'Krishna, Devī, Śiva, &c.'
- § 2. Feminine nouns are often formed from masculines, denoting living beings, by the change of the masculine termination or the addition of one peculiarly feminine.
- (a) If the masc. noun ends in -o, the fem. takes -ī; as, chhokro, 'a boy,' chhokrī, 'a girl;' ghodo, 'a horse,' ghodī, 'a mare;' beto, 'a son,' betī, 'a daughter.' Also dev, 'a god,' devī, 'a goddess.'
 - (b) When the masc. ends in i or a consonant, the termi-

nation fem. is -an, -en, $-an\bar{\imath}$ or $-\bar{a}n\bar{\imath}$; as, $moch\bar{\imath}$, 'a bootmaker,' mochan, 'a bootmaker's wife;' $bh\bar{a}\bar{\imath}$, 'a brother,' behen, 'a sister' (irreg.); seth, 'a merchant, &c., $seth\bar{a}n\bar{\imath}$, 'a merchant's wife;' patel, 'headman of a village,' $patel-\bar{a}n\bar{\imath}$, 'a Patel's wife;' $pis\bar{a}ch$, 'a goblin,' $pis\bar{a}chan\bar{\imath}$, 'a female goblin.'

Another fem. termination is $-d\bar{\imath}$; as, $ch\bar{a}kar$, 'a manservant,' $ch\bar{a}kard\bar{\imath}$, 'a female servant;' $\bar{u}ndar$, 'a rat,' $undard\bar{\imath}$, 'a female rat;' $Bh\bar{\imath}l$, 'a $Bh\bar{\imath}l$,' $Bh\bar{\imath}ld\bar{\imath}$, 'a female $Bn\bar{\imath}l$;' $gul\bar{a}m$, 'a slave,' $gul\bar{a}md\bar{\imath}$, 'a female slave' (contemptuously).

(c) Somewhat irregular are:—nar, 'male,' nārī, 'a female;' rājā, 'a king,' rāṇī, 'a queen;' brāhmaṇ, 'a Brahmaṇ,' brāhmaṇī, 'a female Brahmaṇ;' vāṇīo, 'a shop-keeper, vāṇīeṇ, 'a shopkeeper's wife.'

§ 3. Compounds.

Gujarātī compounds (as distinguished from Sanskrit compound words introduced into the language) are generally formed by the mere juxtaposition of the simple words. They will be best illustrated by a few examples. E.g:—

Rājdarbār, 'a royal court,' 'a levee;' fr. rāj or rājā and darbār.

Gharkām, 'housework;' fr. ghar, 'house,' and kām, 'work.'

Rītbhāt, 'manners and customs.'

Kav tārūp, 'poetical.'

Yūropkhaṇḍ, 'the continent of Europe.'

Vāyubharelī mashak, 'an air-filled water-skin.'

Hīrāmāneke jadelān tathā motīnān gharenān pahere chhe, 'They wear ornaments set with diamonds-and-rubies and made of pearls.' Here the first word is composed of hīrā, pl. of hīro, 'a diamond;' mānek, 'a ruby,' and the postposition -e.

A slightly different kind of compound is formed by inserting o between two repetitions of the same word; as, deśodeś, 'from country to country;' hajārohajār, 'thousands of thousands.'

Not a few nouns and verbs are formed by adding an unmeaning word to one which has the meaning to be expressed; as, farvuñ, 'to turn;' farvuñ harvuñ, 'to walk about.' (Cf. Panjābī, pāṇī-wāṇī, roṭī-woṭī; Urdū, shorbhor; Persian, āb-māb; French, pêle-mêle; English, shilly-shally.)

CHAPTER IX.

Syntax.

Much of the Syntax of the language has already been introduced where it seemed likely to be most easily remembered. In this chapter we deal with the few points which still remain to be elucidated, but omit a detailed account of those common to most Indo-European tongues, regarding which error is almost impossible.

§ 1. In Gujarātī, the usual order of words in a sentence is,—(1) Subject; (2) Indirect Object; (3) Direct Object; (4) Predicate: but this may be altered for the sake of emphasis.

When a number of nouns, all in the same case and governed by one and the same postposition, occur in a sentence, the postposition is generally attached only to the last noun, though they are all in the oblique form. As, Te rājāe bahu loko, purusho, strīo ne chhokrāñone mārī nānkhyān, 'That king killed many people—men, women and children.'

But in such sentences it is a common practice to put the whole of the nouns in the absolute state, and then place the oblique plural of the pronoun e or te after them, adding the postposition required to the pronoun only. As, Mārā

pitā, mārā mitro ne mārā dīkrāo, teoe ā kām kīdhuñ; 'My father, my friends and my sons, they did this work.'

If two or more nouns of the same gender have a common predicate, that predicate is plural, but agrees with the subjects in gender. But if the subjects be of different genders, the predicate is put in the neuter * plural. As, (1) Māro dīkro ane teno mitr sāvā chhe, 'My son and his friend are good.' But (2) Māro dīkro ne mārī dīkrī sārāñ chhe, 'My son and my daughter are good.' Sulochanī ne teno bhāī nagarbhaṇī hiṇdyāñ, 'Sulochanī and her brother walked towards the city.'

§ 2. The predicate, whether it be a verb or an adjective, may be put in the *plural* to show respect, even if the subject be in the *singular*. In such cases, if the subject be masculine the predicate is also masculine; but if the subject be feminine, respect requires that the predicate be NEUTER plural. As, (1) $R\bar{a}j\bar{a}$ āvyā chhe, 'the king has come;' but, (2) temnī sāthe rānī pan āvyāñ chhe, 'with him the queen has also come.'

If there be in a sentence several subjects of different genders joined by the disjunctive conjunctions $v\bar{a}$, $\bar{a}thv\bar{a}$, ke, the predicate agrees in gender and number with that nearest to it; as, teno ghodo ke tenī gāy marī gaī, 'his horse or his cow died.'

When an impersonal verb is put in the passive, the noun which was the subject of the verb is put in the oblique

^{*} This strange idiom occurs also in the Icelandic language.

SYNTAX. 97

form with -thī, and the verb becomes impersonal neuter; as, Huñ beṭho, 'I sat,' which becomes mārāthī besāyuñ.

§ 3. The Infinitive and Gerundive when used as subjects require the agent, if a noun, to be put in the oblique form with -e; and if a pronoun, in what we may call the dative (māre, tamāre, &c.); as, Strīoe ā chopḍī vānchvī chhe, 'Women ought to read this book;' māre e kām karvuñ nathī, 'I must not do that.' If the Infinitive when used as a subject governs any object, then it must agree with its object in gender and number, though not in case; as, Māṇase amne Devnā marmonā kārbhārīonā jevā gaṇvā, 'Men should account us as stewards of the mysteries of God.' In such sentences the verb to be is often omitted.

The infinitive may be declined exactly as a noun, and the gerundive as an adjective. The oblique singular of the infinitive, with or without -ne, is used after another verb to denote purpose, &c.; as, tene hiān rehevā dyo, 'let him stay here;' te bādśāh deś jītī levā(ne) āvyo, 'that king came to conquer the country.'

§ 4. The preterite of a verb, both active and passive, may be used as a gerund by affixing any postposition and changing the absolute form of the verb into the oblique; as, te jaṇāyo, 'he was born;' te jaṇāyā vagar, 'after he was born;' Parameśvarnī stuti kīdhā pachhī, 'after having praised God;' maraṇ pāmyā pehelāñ, 'before having died;' paisā līdhā vinā, 'without having taken the money.' A very slightly altered construction is seen in Sikandarnā muā pachhī, 'after Alexander's having died.'

The 1st Plural Aorist is used quite indefinitely in many cases; as, Nīche āvīe, tyāre medānmāñ ek moṭuñ koṭ dekh -āśe, 'When we (i.e. one comes) come down, then a large fort will be seen in the plain.' 'We' is sometimes used in English in this sense, but we more commonly say 'you' or 'one.'

- § 5. The Gujarātī language can express several varieties of meaning in the Imperative:—
- (1) The simple Imperative is used when it is desired that the command be immediately executed; as, $tame \ \bar{a} \ chop d\bar{i} \ v\bar{a}\bar{n}cho$, 'Read this book.'
- (2) If the command is intended to be obeyed after some interval, the j forms of the Future are employed; as, tame ā chopdī vānchjo, 'you will read this book.'
- (3) If a polite injunction is intended, the ordinary Future is employed; as, tame ā chopḍī vāñchśo, 'you will (kindly) read this book.'
- (4) To imply duty, the Gerundive is employed; as, tamāre ā chopḍī vānchvī, 'You should read this book.'
- § 6. The negative of the simple imperative is formed by adding $m\bar{a}$ or $m\bar{a}\tilde{n}$ after it; as, $tame\ \bar{a}\ chop d\bar{i}\ v\bar{a}\bar{n}cho\ m\bar{a}$, 'Don't read this book.'

That of the second form above given—the Future Imperative—is formed by placing the verb in the present participle and adding nahi; as, tame ā chopdī vānchtā nahi, 'You shall not read this book.'

The verb devun is used with the oblique infinitive of

SYNTAX. 99

another verb to imply permission (as denā is in Hindī and Urdū); as, Tane e kām kurvā huñ daīś nahi, 'I shall not permit thee to do that work.'

§ 7. Idiomatic Phrases.

In Gujarātī the 1st Personal Pronoun precedes the second, and the second the third, as in Latin. Thus instead of saying 'He and I,' we say in Gujarātī, 'I and he' (huñ ne te).

Instead of saying, 'Neither my friend nor his daughter has gone,' we more commonly say, 'My friend or his daughter, no one has gone,' (māro mitr ke tenī dikrī, koī gayuñ nathī), the koī taking a neuter participle because it refers to either of two subjects, one of which is masculine and the other feminine. In similar sentences, when things are mentioned instead of persons, kaīñ is used instead of koī.

As the oratio obliqua is unknown in Gujarātī, the oratio recta is used instead. Such a sentence therefore as, 'The queen said that she would go home,' would be rendered thus, Rānīe kahyuñ ke, huñ ghēr jaīś, (literally, "The queen said that, 'I shall go home'").

When the subject in a sentence is a subordinate sentence, as, 'I heard that he had gone,' it is often better to put the subordinate sentence first, and then to place e or te after it; as, Te gayo hato, e men sāmbhalyun (literally, 'He had gone,—this I heard').

A title in Gujarātī, as in most Sanskritic languages

follows the proper name to which it is attached; as, $R\bar{a}md\bar{a}s \stackrel{.}{Seth}$, almost = 'Mr. Rāmdās.'

In interrogative sentences no change in the order of the words occurs, but śuñ, 'what?' is placed either before or after the sentence; as, Śuñ te āvyo chhe? 'What? has he come?'—or, te āvyo chhe śuñ? Frequently ke takes the place of śuñ at the end of such a sentence, and sometimes both are used together; as, teo chālī gayā chhe ke śuñ? 'Have they gone away?' (literally, 'Have they gone away, or what?')

APPENDIX A.

There are many words in Gujarātī which occur in other languages also in a more or less varied form. Some of these are pure Gujarātī words derived from the Sanskrit; others are taken from Arabic, Persian, &c. A few observations upon the forms which words of both classes assume in Gujarātī may perhaps be found useful, especially to those acquainted with any of the languages above mentioned.

While Hindī shows a preference for the sound b, Gujarātī prefers v. Hence in many instances a vocable beginning with b in Hindī has v as its first letter in Gujarātī. E.g., Hin. banniā, Guj. vānīo: Hin. bikhai, Guj. više: Hin. binā, Guj. vinā: Hin. parbbat, Guj. parvat, &c. Here Gujarātī resembles the Sanskrit more closely than spoken Hindī.

Gujarātī also prefers \bar{a} to a: hence $m\bar{a}khan$ for Hin. makkhan: Guj. $m\bar{a}kh\bar{i}$ for Hin. $makkh\bar{i}$.

But ai becomes e, au becomes o in Gujarātī; as, Guj. pēdā for Urdu and Pers. ינגעו : besvuñ for Hin. baiṭhnā: pesvuñ for Hin. paiṭhnā: Guj. ōlād for Arab. اَوْلاد : Guj. mot for Arab. مَوْت : Guj. londī for Hin. laundī.

And e in Hin. sometimes becomes ā in Guj.; as, Hin. mera, Guj. māro: Hin. terā, Guj. tāro.

U is usually unchanged, but sometimes becomes a; as, Hin. tum, Guj. tame: Hin. $tumh\bar{a}r\bar{a}$, Guj. $tam\bar{a}ro$.

Hindī r becomes d, and rh becomes dh in Guj.; as, dod-vuñ for daurnā; chadhvuñ for charhnā.

Hindī th sometimes becomes s; as, Hin. paithnā, Guj. pesvuñ.

Such words as have i in the stem in Hindī have generally a instead in Gujarātī; as, Hin. $bigarn\bar{a}$, Guj. $vagadvu\bar{n}$: Hin. $likhn\bar{a}$, Guj. $lakhvu\bar{n}$: Hin. $miln\bar{a}$, Guj. $malvu\bar{n}$. But i in Arabic and Persian words is generally represented by e (pronounced somewhat short) in Guj.; as, Guj. $s\bar{a}heb$ for Arab. c: Guj. $h\bar{a}kem$ for Arab.

A before h in Arabic words is changed into e in Gujarātī; as, Guj. sehelo for Arab. شهند: Guj. vehem (and contracted vem) for Arab. وَهُم . Similarly, Pers. فعند becomes in Guj. seher and saher: Arab. and Pers. فعند becomes Guj. mehnat: Arab. محند becomes Guj. rehem.

Sanskrit vy (Hindī by), followed by a vowel, often becomes ve; as, Guj. $vehev\bar{a}r = \text{Hin. } vyavah\bar{a}r$: Guj. $vep\bar{a}r$ for Hin. $byup\bar{a}r$.

Arabic $\ddot{\upsilon}$ (q) becomes kh if it occurs after a vowel;

as, Guj. vakhat, Arab. وتت. Otherwise it is generally changed into k; as, Guj. kabūl, Arab. قبرل.

The z sounds of Urdu and Persian (and of the in words introduced from Arabic into those languages) become j in Gujarātī; as, jūlam for ظلم: jakāt for قلان.

گت, &c., when introduced into Gujarātī, become

single; as, hak, Mahamad, mudat (or mudad).

Sometimes letters are transposed; as, Guj. gunhā for Pers. كناء: Guj. ţīpvuñ for Hin. pīţnā.

Gujarātī has a preference for the sounds of l and n after long vowels, in this resembling Panjābī rather than Hindī. D sometimes takes the place of the Panjābī l; as, Panj. uthālnā, Guj. uthādvuñ.

Sometimes an extra long vowel \bar{a} is inserted in Gujarātī in words borrowed from Persian; as, Guj. śāhājādo and śāhjādo for Pers. شاهراده: Guj. bāhādurī for Pers. . بَهَادُرى

The Arabic letters & and when they occur at the end of a word without a long vowel prefixed become ā and e respectively in Gujarātī; as, جَمْع, Guj. jamā: قني, Guj. fate.

W in Hin. sometimes becomes m in Guj.; as, Hin. pānchwān, Guj. pānchmo: West Panjābī pāwaņā, Guj.

pāmvuñ.

In adverbial terminations, the Urdū $y\bar{u}\bar{n}$ (Old Hin. $yo\bar{n}$) becomes -em in Guj.; as, Old Hin. $tyo\bar{n}$, Hin. and Urdu $ty\bar{u}\bar{n}$, Guj. tem.

In Gujarātī, \bar{u} and $\bar{\imath}$ are frequently substituted for u and i, and $vice\ versa$.

If a word taken from another language ends in -ā or -a, this generally becomes -o in Guj., but occasionally changes to -uñ; as, Guj. mevo, from Pers. نميون : Guj. śāhājādo for Pers. هـنود : but Guj. paranduñ for Pers. هـنود :

Many words are formed by reduplicating the stem; as, $m\bar{a}r\bar{a}m\bar{a}r\bar{i}$, 'quarrel,' from $m\bar{a}rvu\bar{n}$, 'to strike.'

APPENDIX B.

TRANSLITERATION.

In order to give the student practice in transliteration before proceeding to the Second Part, we here append a few lines of Gujarātī with a transliteration in accordance with the system adopted in this Grammar.

સારો પવન જોઈને પછી અને બોર્નિઓ બેટમાંથી Sāro pavan joīne pachhī ame Bornio bet mānthi નીકળ્યા, પણ આગળ ચાલતાં તોફાન લાગવા માડ્યું. nīkaļyā, paņ āgaļ chāltān tofān lāgvā mādyuñ. કેટલાક દહાડા લગી તો અમાર્ટ વહાણ ઊછળતુંજ Ketlāk dahādā lagī to amārun vahān ūchhaltunij છેવટે પવન નરમ પડ્યો, અને દરિયો જરા rahyuñ. Chhevațe pavan narm padyo, ane dariyo jara ધીમો થયો, એટલે બહુ છેટે અમે એક મછવો ડબકાં dhīmo thayo, ețle bahu chhețe ame ek machhvo dabakăñ ખાતો દીઠો. દૂરબીનમાંથી જોયું તો કેટલાંક આદમી Dūrbīnmānthī joyun to keţlānk ādmī khāto dītho. भारा जापे हीडाँ, अने ते हुः जनी निशानीनी वावरो mārā bāpe dīṭhāñ, ane te duhkhnī nisānīno vāvaţo चढावतां होय भेवां क्षायां. तथी सने समाई chadhāvatan hoy evān jaṇāyān. Tethī ame amārun वहाण तेणीतर से क्षेष्ठ गया, पण हियानी लारे vahān teṇītaraf leī gayā, paṇ dariyānī bhāre होणोने क्षिं त्यां पहाँचीने ते मह्यामाहिना chholone līdhe tyān pahoūchīne te machhvāmānhenā क्षेष्ठ से सार्था अध्या पार्टी हिना क्षेष्ठ क्षेत्र प्रेम विद्रा तेमां मान से क्ष्राने क्ष्राने पार्टी पार्टी हिना क्ष्राने क्ष्

"Finding the wind favourable, we then left the island of Borneo, but as we went forward a storm began to come on. For some days accordingly our vessel continued to toss about. At last the wind fell ('fell quiet'), and the sea became somewhat calm; then very far off we saw a boat rolling. When looked at through the telescope, my father saw (in it) several persons, and they were perceived to be flying the distress signal-flags. Therefore we brought our vessel towards them, but on account of the heavy seabillows much time was spent in arriving there and taking the people in the boat on board our own ship. There were five persons on board it, and among them only one had sufficient consciousness to speak."

PART II.

GUJARĀTĪ READING LESSONS.

INDEX.

				PAGE
I.	Muḥammad			109
II.	Muḥammadan Invasions of Indi	a		125
III.	Akbar and Aurangzeb			133
IV.	Ḥaidar 'Alī		. ,	144
V.	Newspaper Extracts			147

GUJARĀTĪ READING LESSONS.

I. MUHAMMAD.

કોરેશ નામની અરખ લોકોમાં એક ઉંચી જાત છે. तेना स्थापनाराना वंशमां महमद अन्म्यो हतो. ते हाशिमना इणनी हती, अने तेना वंशीनां नाम અરબી વૈશાવળીઓનાં ચોકસાઇથી રાખેલાં છે. હાશેમનો છોકરો અબ્દુલ મોતાલેબ એકસો દશ વર્ષની ઉમર સુધી છન્યો. અબ્દુલા ગામનો તેનો એક નાહાનો છોકરો વાહેબની ખુબસુરત છોકરી આ મિના સાથે પરણ્યો. આ બે જણને ઘરે મહુમદ ઇસવી સન* ૫૭૦ ના વર્ષમાં મક્કા શેહેરમાં જન્મ્યો. तेना अन्या पेहेंसां अथवा तेना अयपणामां तेनो जाप भरी गयो; अने तेनी भा पण तेने आह વર્ષનો મેહેલીને મરી ગઇ. તેને વારસામાં માલ પાંચ ઉંટ, અને એક ગુલાન્યી એટલું આપ્યું, તેથી तेने तेना दादाना हाथ तणे रेहेवुं पडयुं. महमदने

^{*} The contraction for this is &. A.

तेना हाहा भे भरती वेणा भे तेना छो हरा सणु-तासे भ, જેને तेनी भासभता भणी, तेने स्वाधीन કચો. મહુમદ ખરો ખર વચના થયો * તારે તેણે તેને વેપારનું કામ સીખવ્યું. તે પચીસ વર્ષનો થયો તાંહાં સુધી પોતાના કાકાની ચાકરીમાં રહ્યો; એટ-લીજ વાત તેના ખચપણા વિશેની માલુમ છે.

मूसा तथा ४ शु ४ श्वरना प्राचीन मोडलेला भा, अने महमहना पूर्वाधिडा श्री भा, जारे लम्या तारे लेवा यमत्डारो थया हता तेवाल यमत्डारो महमह लम्यो तारे पणु थया, अवु मुसलमानी डिता- जोना लणनारा भा लणे छे. ते भा लणे छे डे महमह पे गंभलर लम्यो ते वेणा भे अंड प्रडाश अवी तो थयो हतो डे तेथी सिरी मा देशना सघणा शिल्ला भा, शेहेरो, अने गामडां भा मां तेथी छ जनस पड़्यो हतो; तथा साना सरीवरनां पाणी जिलाइल सुडाई गयां हतां, तेथी तेष्ठपर अंड शेहेर जेवा यु हतुं; तथा अंड धरती डेप थयो हतो, तेथी धरानना राजना मोहोलना यह मनारा पड़ी गया हता; तथा पारसी लाड़ोनो पवित्र आत्रा होलवाई गयो हतो;

^{*} In this sentence supply jāre (jyāre) because of the tāre following (Gr. Cap. VI. § 3, fin.). Examples of this continually occur.

अने येंद्र तथा तारा हिपर वसनारा अशुध्य आत-માઓ કાહાડી મુકાયા હતા, અને તેઓથી પૃધ્વી ઉપર મુતીઓ ગાં પાછું આવી શકાયું નહીં, અને દેવવાણી થઇ શકી નહીં. તે કિતાબોના લખનારાઓ એથી પણ વધારે એવું લખેછે કે તે બાળકે, આ દ્ની-આમાં જનમ ધરતાંજ, ઘુટણીએ પડીને પોતાના હાથ આકાશની તરફ ઉંચા કર્યા હતા, અને એવી રીતે આ શબ્દો બોલ્યો હતો, "ઇશ્વર મોટો છે; ઇશ્વર એકજ છે; અને હું તેના પેગંમળર છું." મહ-भदना अनम विशे या यने येवीय णीछ यद्लुत વાતો કેહેવાએલી છે. પણ એ અનએબ સરખી वातीने टेडी आपवाने जरा पणु साजिती नथी. અને ખચીત એવું સાફ માલુમ પડેછે કે મહ્મદના अन्याने धणो अण गया पछी भेवी वातो हेहेवावा માંડા. જો આવી અજનએખ જેવી અને પ્રાટવાતો जनी हीत तो से वाता सीडीने याद रेहेत, सने એથી તેઓ મહમદની કેહેણ કખુલ રાખત. ને લો-કોએ મહુમદને પુછ્રચૂં કે કાંઇ ચમત્કાર કરી દેખાડે તો તું ઇશ્વરથી આવેલો છે એવું અને માનીએ, તારે महमह पोताना लनम नेणामे थमेला यमत्धारो વિશે ખોલ્યો હોત, પણ તેણે એમ કદી કીધું નહીં.

ल्भिदीन नामनी डोरेष नतनील सेड जार्डी हती. તે મક્કા શેહેરમાંના એક માટા માણસની વીધવા હતી. તેને તાંહાં મહુમદ પચીસ વર્ષની ઉમરે ચાકર रह्यो. तेनी याध्यीमां हतो तारे ते तेनां ७ यने તેનો વેપારનો માલ લઇને દમાસકસ શેહેરનાં માટાં બન્નરમાં ગયો હતા. તેના ચિત્તાકર્ષક ગુણને લીધે આ સ્ત્રીને મહુમદ એટલો તો પર્સદ પડ્યો કે તેણે તેની સાથે લગન શીધાં. આ લગન થચાથી મહ્મદની અવસ્થા तेना જન્મ તથા કળને ચોગ્ય એવી થઇ. આવી દીશામાં આવ્યો તારે પોતાના ઘરડા વરડા-એ પોતાની જાતમાં માટા સરદારો હતા, એ વાત તેને ચાર આવે, એમાં કાંઇ અશ્વર્ય નહીં. પોતાના લગન થયા પછી તેણે પરદેશ કરવું છોડી દીધું નહીં. પરદેશ કરવાથી જુદા જુદા ધર્મ માનનારા જુદી જુદી प्रज्नना सोडोने तेणे ज्नेया, तेथी डरीने आगण पाछणना देशमांना धर्मना तथा राज्य प्रकरणना वियारो तथा धाराने। विशे तेने गनान भक्यूं. ते ગનાનનો તેણે પોતાના એકાંતના વિચારમાં ઉપ-योग ५थी.

[ે] મહુમદની પચીસથી તે ચાળીસ વર્ષની ઉમર સુધી

मां * डांध मारी ज्लावा सामेड णीना जनी नथी. तोपण दुनिया उपर मेड ननो धर्म स्थापनानो हिंभत करेंसो नियार तेणे के डीधा ते मा अनसर-मां डीधा. मारे तेनी छंदगीमां सिंड डत्तां मा मुदृत वधारे अगत्यनी छे. पण तेना मनमां मे नियार डेम आन्यो, मे नियार आन्या पेहेंसां तेने शा शा नियारो आन्या हता, तेथी तेणे शुं मतसण हांसस डरवानी † धारी हती, तथा ते डेम जहार पड़यो, मे नातो आपण्ने जराजर मासुम नथी.

ઘણા વર્ષે સુધી વિચાર કર્યા પછી પોતાની સગળી ચોજનાઓ પાકી કરીને, (ઇં સં દુંબ્દ) મહુમદ હળવે હળવે અને ઘણીજ ખબરદારીથી તે ચુક્તિઓ પ્રમાણે કામ કરવા લાગ્યો. મક્કા શેહેરની પાસે હીરા નામની એક ગુફા હતી, તેમાં અપવાસ, ભકતી, અને ઇશ્વર સંબંધી વિચાર કરવાને મહુમદ કેટલીએક વારસુધી રોજ જયા કરતો. પોતે એકાંતમાં હતો તે વેળાએ જે કાંઇ અલોકિક દેખાવો દીઠા અને વાણીઓ સાંભળી તેની વાતો તેણે સાંઝરે ઘેર આ-

^{*} The words from te to man are all considered as one, 'in the "to-the-40th-year-of-his-life (time)."'

⁺ Supply āsā, 'hope,' or some similar word.

વીને પોતાની ખાઇડીની આગળ કેહેવા માંડી. આ-ખરે તેણે પોતાની બાઇડીને કાંઇ વચન કહ્યું, અને तेने इह्यू हे, से वयन क्ण्रीयेक् दृते आवीन नने ઈશ્વરી પ્રગટપણું આપેલું છે, તેમાંનો એક ભાગ છે. મહ્મદ એવું કેહેછે કે અલ-કદ્ર એ નામની* રમઝાન मिल्नाना २३ मा तथा २४ मा रोजनी प्रण्यात राते ते हते यण डाट लरेसा आ डारमां आ वी ने મને સારા સમાચાર કહ્યા તે આ પ્રમાણે કે, "એા મહુમદ તું ઇશ્વરનો મોકલેલો છે, અને હું જળીયેલ્ हूत छुं." ते हुते रेशमी आपड हे भाड्यूं, ते उपर કાંઇ લખેલું હુતું, અને વળી કહ્યું કે, "વાંચ." તે વેળાએ પેગંમખરે એમ ઉત્તર દીધો કે મારાથી વંચાત नशी. नारे हते इरीथी इहाँ हे, "तारी प्रल् केशे सर्व वश्तुमा छत्पन्न डरीछे, मने लेखे भाषासने ખૈધાઇ ગમેલા લોહીના ખનાવેલો છે, તેનું નામ લઈને વાંચ. તારો દયાળુ પ્રભૂ, જેણે કલમ ‡ ૫કડ-તાં સિંખલું છે, અને જે વાતોથી માણસ અનાણો છે

^{*} Feminine because agreeing with rāt, in the next line but one.

[†] Vide Gram., Cap. V. § 12 and § 13, pp. 67 and 70.

^{† &}quot;Through whom holding the pen must be learned." Vide Gram., Cap. V. § 4, fin. (p. 51.)

ते वातो तेने समलविष्ठे, तेना नामधी तुं वांय."*
लारे आयी अलमेल सरणी मुसाडातनी वात महमहे भहीलने डही, तारे तेखे ते मानी, अने भेम
डह्युं हे, महमद डेाई दाहाडो पोताना सोडोना पेगैमलर धशे. के वात भहील से सांमणी ते वात
तेखे तरतक पोताना वरडा नामना सगाने डही.
तेखे पण ते वात मानी, पण ते महमदना चेसाभामों ग्रां भेसी नथी.

પછી મહુમદ સાધુસહી છંદગી, જે પવિત મના-ચછે, તેવી છંદગીમાં રહેવા લાગ્યો. ને થોડા દાહા-ડામાં તેનો એક ચાકર જેંદ્ર ઇબન હારેથ નામે તેનો ચેલો થયા. જેંદના ઇમાનને લીધે મહુમદે તેને સ્વતંત્રતા પાછી આપી; અને તારથી મુસલમાનોમાં એવો ધારો પડ્યો છે કે જે ગુલામો મહુમદનો ધર્મ કખૂલ કરે તેઓને છુટા કરવા; તોપણ આ ધારો સઘળી વેળા પળાયો નથી.

એ પ્રમાણે મહમદના મતનાં પેહેલવેલાં માન-નારાં† તેની ખાઇડી અને તેનો ગુલામ એ બે જણાં હતાં.

^{*} Suratu'l 'Alaq (Sura 96, vv. 1-5).

[†] Neut. because qualifying two nouns of dissimilar gender: Gram., Cap. III. § 2.

तेना धरमभां नीने भाण्य के आव्यो ते तेना કાકા અખુતાલેખના દીકરો અલી હતો. તે તે વેળાએ છોકરા હતા. ચોથો અબુ-બકર નામનો મોટો આળરૂદાર અને અક્કા શેહેરમાં મોટી સત્તાદાર* भाण्य तेना ધरमभां आव्यो. અખू-ખકरना सभ-ज्नववाथी ओधभान, अण्हुस्-रेहेभान्, साह, अस्-જોખેર, વગેરે કેટલાએક મકકા શેહેરના મુખી માણ-સો પણ આવ્યા. તેના ધરમમાં આ લોકો આવ્યા ते तेना अधीशरने मुणी रेशे आपनारा अने जा-હ़ाहुर लडवैया थया. आ वेणा अ अल-लडरे ले महह आपी तेने साइ महमहे तेने अण्हल्लाह (ઇशवरनो हास), अल्-सिही (सायो) अने अती इ એટળે ખચેલો (નરકમાંથી) એવા ખતાળો તેને आध्या .

કોરેશ જ્તના લોકો સામા થશે એવું ભય પા-મીને મહ્મદે વળુ વર્ષ સુધી પોતાના ધરમનો ઉપ-દેશ ખાનગી રીતેજ કર્યા કીધો. આ વેળાએ તેને ઘણીએક ઇશવરી વાતો મળી, એવું મહ્મદ કેહેતો હતો. આખરે તેને અખૂ-બકરની મદદમાં પક્કો

^{*} Fem. to qualify sattā in sattādār.

ભરાસો ખેઠો, અને એવું જ્વેયું કે હવે મારા ધરમના भाननारा पणा थया छे, तारे धशवरे भने तभारी પાસે મોકલ્યો છે, અને તેની કેહેણ કેહેવાનો હ્કમ કરેલો છે, એવું પોતાના સગાંવાહાલાંઓની આગળ કેહેવાનો તેણે ડરાવ કીધી. પછી એ નતલખ સર तेणे तेना धाधाना छो धरा अधीन अध मलसस કરવાનો હુકમ શીધો, અને તે મજલસનાં ઇજન અબ્દ્લ-મોતાલેખથી ઉતરેલાં સગળા માણસોને મોકલ્યાં. તેઓમાંના આસરે યાળીસ જણે ઇજન કબુલ રાખ્યાં. પછી તે ઈજન ફરીથી ફેરન્યાં, અને इरीथी अपूल धर्यां तारपछी महमहे तेमोने आ ત્રીતે ભાષણ કીધું:—"જઝીરાત ઉલ-અરખમાં કોઇ એવો માણુસ નહીં હશે કે જે ઠરાવ હમણાં હું મારાં સગાંઓને કેહેવા માગુંછું તેથી સારો દરાવ કરશે. हुं तभने आ हुनिआई अने आवती हुनिआई अुण આાપુંછું. સર્વશક્તિમાન ઇશવરે તમને તેની તરફ ખોલાવવાનો મને હુકમ કરેલો છે, માટે તમારા-. માંથી મારાે વઝીર (પ્રધાન) અને મારો ભાઇ કોણ થશે ?"

तेमे। सगणामोमे मानाधानी ध्री, मधना ना

કહી. तारे असी ઉઠीने आ प्रमाणे लोस्यो—"ओ ઇશવરના पेगं मलर! હું तारे। वर्जीर થઇશ. के माणुसो तारी सामां थशे तेना दांत હું तोडी पाडीश; तेना डोणा હું भेंथी डाढीश, तेनुं पेट હું ચીરી નાંખીશ, અને તેના ટાંડીઆ ભાગી નાંખીશ!" એવું અલીએ કહ્યું, તારપછી મહુમદ તેને ઘણી નરમા-શથી* ભેટયો, અને તે વેળાએ જેઓ આગળ હતા તેઓને આ પ્રમાણે કહ્યું—"આ મારો ભાઈ, મારો કારભારી, અને મારો ખલીફો છે, માટે તમે એને સ્વાધીન થઇને એને તાબે રેહો." તે વેળાએ સગળી મજલસ માન તેની ઉપર હશી, અને અબૂ-તાલેબને કહ્યું, "હવે તારે તારા દિકરાને તાબે થવું નેઇએ."

એ પછી મહુમદે લોકોમાં ખુલી રીતે ઉપદેશ કરવા માંડ્યો. તેની તી જ્ઞ્યુખું ધી, કલ્પના, અને યાદદાસ્ત, પ્રવાસ કીધાથી તથા એકાંતી વીચાર કીધાથી સારી થઇ હતી, અને તેના શરીરની ખુબસૂરતી તથા બોલવાની મીઠાસ એવી હતી કે સગળા લોકોની તેના ઉપર મેહેરબાની થાય. પણ તેઓના મુરતી પુજક ધરમનો તથા તેમની હઠનો તેણે એટલો તો

^{*} For the const. see Gr., Cap. V., § 10, note *.

તીરસ્કાર શધો કે તેથી ઘણા ખરા લોકો તેના દુશ-

हेरसामें सोहों में तेने जद्गर हह्यों, हेरसामें-કોએ તેને અસલની કાહાણીઓ કેહેનારો કહ્યો, અને हेरला भेड़ी भे साई रीते तेने लुई जोलनार तथा હોંગી કહ્યો. આ વખતે લોકોએ મહ્મદને માઠા अने जेथी धिक्कार थाय तेवा शणद कहा. अ विशे કુરાનમાં ઘણીએક જગો પર લખેલું છે:-" મક્કાવા-ળા કેહેછે, એા જેને ચતવણી (કુરાન) મોકલેલી છે તે, तने ખરેખા લુત વળગેલું છે: જો તું ખારે બોલ-तो होत तो शुं तारी साथे हुतो आव्या न होत? कवाल, वाकणी वलत शीवामे हमें हतीने नीचे મોકલતા નથી." (કુરાન અં * દૃ.) "તેઓ કેહેછે हे आ ज्वह छे, अने ते पर हमे वीशवास हरता नथी; अने तेओ। हेहेछे को आ इरान भड़्डा तथा મદીના શેહેરોના કોઇ મોટા માણસને અપાર્યું હોત तो हमे तेने भंगी धर धरत." (२० ४३.) "मध्धा-ना लोडोने पोताने। ही साल आपवानी सने पासे આવે છે. પૂલ્યી તેઓને કાંઇ ચેતવણી આવતી નથી,

[ા] આ stands for અદ્યાય, 'chapter,' i.e. Sūra of the Qur'an.

પણ જારે તેઓ સાંભળેછે તારે તેને તેઓ હશી કાહાડેછે. તેઓ કેહેછે કે, કુરાન એ સ્વપણાંનો હગ-લો છે, એટલુંજ નહીં, પણ તેણે જીઠા છું ચલાવેલું છે." (અ. ૨૧) "અને કાફર લાકો કેહેછે કે, કરાન તેનું ચોજેલું જીઠાળું છે, અને તે ખનાવામાં તેને બીજાઓએ મદદ કરી છે, પણ તેઓ ગેરવાજબી વાત અને જુઠું બોલેછે. તેઓ એવું પણ કેહેછે કે, આ જીની કથાએ છે, અને તેણે એ લખાવી છે, અને એ કથાએ સાંઝે અને સવારે તેણે લખાવેલી છે. કહો કે, જે પૃથવી પરની તથા સ્વગમાંની છાની વાતો જાણે છે તેણે એ પ્રસિધ્ધ કરી છે. તેઓ કેહે છે કે, એ કઇ જાતનો મોકલેલો છે? તે આપણી પઠેજ ખોરાક ખાયછે, અને રસ્તાઓમાં ફરેછે. નાપાક લોકો એવું પણ કેહેછે કે, જે માણુસને તમે માનો-છો તે દીવાના શીવાએ બીજો કોઇ નથી." (અ ૨૫.) "અવીશવાસીએાને જારે આપણે સાબિતીની નિશા-ણીએા ખતાવીએ છુઇએ તારે તેએા સાચાઇ વિશે हेहिंछे हे भे तो लहु छे. तेभा शु भेभ हेहिंछे हे મહુમદે એ જીઠાપણું ચલાવ્યું? જવાબ, જો મેં એ જુકાળું ચલાવ્યું છે તો ખરેખાત તમને મારે લીધે

ઇશાવરથી મેહેરખાની મળશે નહીં: તમે તે વિશે કેલું ખરાખ બોલો છે મે તે સારીપઠે જાણે છે. જે મને પરગઢ કરાએલું છે તે શીવાએ બીજું કાંઇ હું કેહેતો નથી; અને હું સઉને ખુલી ખબર આપનાર કરતાં નધારે નથી." (અ ૪૬.)

પોતાનું માકલેલાપણું ખરૂં ખતાવવાને સઉથી મોટા ઈશવરનું નામ પણ દાખલ કીધું. "જે તમે हेणाछी, अने जे तमे नथी हेणता, तेना सीगन्द ખાઇને હું કહું છું કે હું તમને જે કહું છું તે આખરદાર મોકલેલાની વાતો છે, કાંઈ કવીની વાતો નથી: તમે કેટલી થોડો વીશવાસ લાવોછો! એ કાંઇ શુકન જો-નારની વાતો પણ નથી; તમે કેટલી થોડી ચેતવણી પા નો છો! સગળા પ્રાણીનો જે પ્રભુ તેની પાસેથી એ પ્રગટપણું છે. જો આપણા વિશે જે વાતો કહી તેમાં મહ્મદે કાંઇ જુઠાણું ચલાવ્યું હોત તો અમે તેનો लमणी हाथ पडडीने तेना अंतः डरण्नी नस डापी नांभी होत." (इरान २० ४८.) " इरानने हशी કાહાડવાને જે તીરસ્કાર ભરેલું બોલ્ચો છે તે શ્રા-પિત થાએ।. હું તેને નરકમાં ખળવાને નાંખીશ." (२० ७४.) " अपीशवासी भावे साइ अने सांधण, બેડી, અને ખળતી અગની, એ તૈયાર કર્યાં છે." (અ ૧૧.)

મહ્મદ સઉથી ઘણો ગભરાચો એથી કે લોકોએ તેને વારે વાર પૂછા કીધું કે, તું ઈશવરથી આવેલો છે, એની સાચાઇ કાંઇ ચમતકાર કરીને સાબિત કર. તેના સાંભળનારાઓ કેહેના લાગ્યા કે, " મુસા, ઇસા, અને બીજા પેગંમખરો તારા કેહેવા મુજબ ઇશવર-ના મોકલેલા છે, એવું સાબિત કરવાને ચમતકારો કરતા. હવે જો તું પેર્ગમખર હોય, અને તું અભી-માનથી કેહેછે તે સુજબ તારી આગળના પેગંમખરા-थी भोटी होय, तो अभने तारा पण यभतधार જ્નેવા દે. તું મુએલાને છવતા કર, મુગાને ખોલતા કર, અને બેહેરાને સાંભળતા કર; અથવા જવાહેર-થી તથા કીમતી રાચરચીલાથી શોભાએમાન તારે સારૂ એક સોનાનો મેહેલ ખનાવ; અથવા જે કિતાખ સ્વર્ગથી નીચે ઉતરેલી અથવા દૂતે તારી પાસે આ-ણોલી તું કેહેછે તે અમને દેખાડ, એટલે અમે તારા ઉપર વીશવાસ કરીશું." આ સ્વભાવીક અને વા-लणी सवासी तेने इरता तारे ते वाती उडाववानी તેણે ઘણીએક તદબીરો કીધી, એવું કરાન ઉપરથી

માલુમ પડેછે. "કાકર લોક બોલેછે કે, ઇશવરનો મોકલેલો તું છે એની કાંઇ નિશાણી અમને ખતા-વશે, તાંહાં લગી અને તારો વીશવાસ કરનાર નથી. પણ તને માન ઉપદેશ કરનાર દેરવેલો છે, કાંઇ यमत्रार र्वाने हेरव्यो नथी." (हरान २४० १३.) "જવાખ, નિશાણીએ તો ઇશવરનાજ હાથમાં છે; અને હું પ્રગટ રીતે ઉપદેશ કરનાર છું, કાંઇ અધીક નથી." બીજ વખતે તે તેઓને કેહે છે કે, "જેઓ-એ આગળના પેગંમખરોના ચમતકારો દીઠા હતા ते भा भे ते भनी तीर २५।२ ५ची हती, भारे हवे धरा-વર કાંઇ વધારે ચમતકાર કરશે નહિ. વળી જેઓને વીશવાસ કરવા સારૂ ઇશવરે દેરવ્યા છે તેઓ તો वगर * यमतारे वीशवास हरशे, पण केमा मे પ્રમાણે પર્સંદ શીધેલા નથી, તેઓને ગમે એટલા यमतहार देणाडी में तोपण तेमा हणुस हरनार नथी." " अने जी तेओानी आगण हताने नीये भोडस्या होत अने मुमेसामा तेमानी आगण ખોલ્યા હોત, તોપણ ઇશવરની ખુશી શીવાએ તેઓ વીશવાસ લાવત નહીં," (અં ફ.) તાર પછી જારે

^{*} Or, more idiomatically, ચસ્કારના વગર.

महीनामां ते सशां अरहार हतो तारे में हरं तोने हूर इरवाने तेनी पासे में के लुदो रसतो हतो में वेणामे ते में हुं हें होती हती हे माणण मुसाने तथा ઈसाने यमता इरवानी शांती माणीने ઈશાવરે मोइस्या हता, तोपण सोझे वीशवास साव्या नहीं, माठे ઈશાવરે हमणां मने मोइस्यो छे. हुं लुदी तरेहनो पेणम्लर छुं, मने तसवारना नेरथी वीशवास माणाववाने मने हेर्न्यो छे.

મહુમદના કેટલાએક વેહેની શાગિ દો કેહેછે કે, તેણે ચંદ્રના બે કડકા કીધા; ઝાડો તેને મળવા આવ્યાં; તેના હાથની આંગળીઓ માંથી પાણી વહ્યું; પથ્થરોએ તેને સલામ કરી; એક ભારવટીઓ તેની આગળ રડયો; એક ઉંટે તેની આગળ ફરીઆદ કરી; એક માંસના કકડાએ પોતે ઝરી છે એવી તેને ખબર આપી. એવા એવા બીલ્ન કેટલાએક ચમતકારો તેણે કીધા, પણ એ ચમતકારો વિશે મહુમદ પોતે કાંઇ જ બોલ્યો નથી, અને એવી વાતો કોઇ મોટા મુસલમાન કિતાબ લખનારાઓ પણ લખી ગયા નથી. વળી કુરાનમાં કેથે એ વાતો લખી નથી; તેમાં તો સાફ એમ કેહેછે કે મહુમદ ચમતકાર વિના આવ્યો; એ ઉપરથી સાબિત થાયછે કે એ ચમતકારોની વાતો હમાણાં થોડી મુદત ઉપરની બનાવટ છે.

II. MUHAMMADAN INVASIONS OF INDIA.

હજરત મહુમદ ઇ. સ. ૫% માં મક્કામાં જન્યો હતો, અને તે મુસલમાન ધર્મનો સ્થાપનાર હતો. એણે પોતાનો ધર્મ આખા અર્બસ્તાનમાં ફેલાવ્યો, અને ઇ. સ. ૮૩૨ માં એના મરણ પછી એના ખલી-ફાઓએ એ ધર્મ સિરિયા, મિસર, ઇરાન, તુર્કસ્તાન અને અફગાનિસ્તાનમાં પ્રસાર કર્યો.

મહુમદના મરે પાયા પછી ૧૫ વરસે ઓસમાન નામ-ના એક અરબે થાણા અને મુંબઈના કિનારા ઉપર એક દરિઆઈ કાફ્લા લૂટ મેળવવા માટે માકલ્યો, પરંતુ તેમાં તેનું કાંઈ વલ્યું નહીં.

ध. स. दृद्ध मां च्या से से शिष्ट सुधी विध्या, चने ध. स. ७१२ मां प्यसराना हा हे मना लित निष्म मह मह मि में सिंध पर चढाई शिधी. च्या न प्यते सिंध मां दाहीर ना में राज्य राज्य हरते। हते।, चने तेनी राज्यधानी नुं ना म देनसनगर जेने हास हरांची हहें छे ते हुनं. चे राज्य हा सि में हरानी चारा सिंध प्रांत छती सिंधा, चने त्यांनी नश्ती ना गारा हयों. दाहीर पण सडतां मार्थों गयों. हा सि मनी च्या हते हु थया छतां तेनी सत्ता ना मनी अ रही, चने थोडा न प्यतमां ते अच्या रलपूत से हो चे पाछी

છતી લીધી. હિંદુસ્તાનમાં જે મુસલમાન વંશે રા-જ્યનો પાચો નાંખ્યો, અથવા છતો મેળવીને પો-તાની ખરી રાજ્યસત્તા સ્થાપી, તે ગિઝની વંશ હતો.

Establishment of the Ghaznavite Dynasty.

 सननी नवनी सिरी भो से नेनीस ना ने आेण-ખાતો તાતાર વંશ ખોરાસાનમાં રાજ્ય કરતો હતો, અને તેનું પાચતખ્ત બોખારા હતું. આ વંશના પાં-यमा राज्य अलदुस मिलिङने। असप्तारीन नामे ओङ તુકી ગુલામ હતો, જે પાછળથી ખોરાસાનના હાકેમ थयो; પણ રાજાના કાળ થયાથી એ ગિઝનીમાં નાહાસી ગયો, જ્યાં તે ઇ.સ. ૯૭૬ માં સ્વતંત્રપણ રાજ કરવા લાગ્યો. એની પછી એના ગુલામ તેમજ જમાઈ સબક્તગીન ગિઝનીના રાજ્યના ધણી થયો. એણે ખલ્ચિસ્તાન, તુર્કસ્તાન વગેરે મુલકા છતી पाता नुं राजय वधार्युं. આથી લાહોરના राज्य जय-પાળે એની ઉપર પેશાવર આગળ ઇ.સ. ૯૭૭ નાં હ્મલા કર્યો, પણ ત્યાંથી હાર ખાઇ તેને પાછું ફરવું પડ્યું. સબક્તગીન હુને જચપાળ ઉપર વેર લેવાને પંજાબ ઉપર યહી આવ્યો. જયપાળની મદદે દિલ્હી, કનાજ, કલિજર અને અજમેરના રાજ્યો આવ્યા हता, परंतु तेमने। परालव थयो. सणक्ताने સિંધુ નદી આગળની કેટલીક જગ્યા છતી લીધી, અને પુષ્કળ લૂટ નેળવી પાછે ગયો. સબકતગીન તેની પર્ વરસની વચે ઇ.સ. ૯૯૭ માં મરણ પાન્યો, અને એની પાછળ એના છે કરાે મહુમદ પાતાની ૩૦ વર-સની વચે ગાદીએ બેઠાે.

महमद शिळनिथी ४४७-१०३०—महमद पेतिना थापनी साथे अयपाण अने तेना मणतीआओ। साभो घणी थाहादुरीथी लंडयो हते। अना थापना मरण पछी अणे "सुलतान" पद धारण हर्युं. लूट मेणववाना तथा पोताना धर्म हिंदुस्तानमां हेलाववाना वियारथी अणे आ देश पर १२ स्वारीओ। इरी. अ स्वारीओ। भां अणे पुष्ठण देलत मेणवी, लाओना जन लीधा, अने लाओने मुसलमान इरी युलाम तरीहे वेच्या.

પેહેલી સ્વારી ૧૦૦૧ માં— એણે લાહારના રાજ્ય જયપાળ ઉપર કરી અને તેને પેશાવર આગળ હરાવી પકડ્યો. જયપાળે તેને ખંડણી આપવા કખુલ કરી ત્યારે તેને છેડિયો. જયપાળ આ હારથી જે અપમાન પામ્યો હતો તે ન સહન થવાથી પોતાની ગાદી પર પોતાના છેડિયા અનેગપાળને બેસાડી પોતે ખળી મૂએ!.

બીજ સ્વારી ૧૦૦૪ માં — એણે મુલતાન પાસે ભા-ટીઆના રાજ્ વિજયરાય ઉપર કરી અને તેને હરા-વ્યો, કારણ કે એ રાજ્ન ખંડણી અટકાવી બેઠો હતો. લીજી સ્વારી ૧૦૦૫ માં—આ સ્વારી એણે મુલ-તાનના સરદાર અબદુલ ફાત લાેદી સામે કરી તેને હરાવ્યો.

ચાંથી સ્વારી ૧૦૦૮ માં—આ ચઢાઇ મહુમદે લા-હોરના રાજ્ય જચપાળના છોકરા અનંગપાળ સામે કરી. એ રાજ્ય દિલ્હી, કલિંજર, કનાજ અને બીજા રજપૂત રાજ્યમાં સાથે મળી જઇ સામા લડવા ગયો, પણ વૈહિંદગઢ આગળ હાર્યો. આ પછી મહુમદે નગરકાટનું દેહેરું લૂટ્યું, જયાંથી પુષ્કળ દ્રવ્ય એને મળ્યું.

પાંચની સ્વારી ૧૦૧૦ માં — આ સ્વારીમાં એણે મુલતાન છતી લીધું, અને ત્યાંના સરદાર અખદુલ ફાત લાેદીને કેદ કીધાે.

છુડ્ડી સ્વારી ૧૦૧૧ માં — સરસ્વતી અને જમના નદીની વચ્ચે થાણે જાર પર કરી અને બે લાખ હિંદુ-ઓને કેલ્કરી ગુલાના તરીકે વેચ્ચા.

સાતમી તથા આદમી સ્વારી ૧૦૧૪-૧૦૧૫ માં—આ વખતે મહ્મદ ગિઝનવીએ કાશ્મીર ઉપર ચઢાઇ કરી, પણ તેમાં એને સખત હાની થઇ અને માર ખાઇ પાછું જવું પડ્યું.

નવની સ્વારી ૧૦૧૯ માં—આ સ્વારી એણે કનાજ ઉપર કરી. ત્યાંના રાજ્ન કુંવરરાય એની સામે લડયો નહીં, પણ એને તાબે થઇ દ્રવ્ય આપ્યું, તેથી મહુમદે તેને કાંઇ દુઃખ દીધું નહીં— ત્યાંથી મહુમદ મથુરા ગયો. આ નગરમાં એણે વીશ દિવસ સુધી લૂટ ચલાવી અને પ૩,૦૦૦ હિંદુઓને ચુલામ કરી બે બે રૂપિયે તેમને વેચ્ચા.

દસની તથા અગીઆરમી સ્વારી ૧૦૨૨-૨૩ માં— આ ચઢાઇ એણે કલીંજરના રાજ્ય ઉપર કરી. આ નખતે અનંગપાળના છેંાકરા જચપાળ બીજાએ આ રાજ્નને મદદ કરી; તેનું પરિણામ એ નિપજયું કે મહમદે લાહાર ખાલસા કર્યું, અને ત્યાં રાજય ચલાવવાને એક મુસલમાન સૂબા નિમ્યો. હિંદુ-સ્તાનમાં મુસલમાન રાજયની સ્થાપના આ નખનાથી થએલી ગણાયછે. આગળ જોકે મુસલમાનાએ ચઢાઇ કરી ઘણીક છતાં નેળવી હતી ખરી, તાપણ હિંદુસ્તાનની એકે જચાના તેઓ ધણી થયા ન હોતા.

ખારની સ્વારી ૧૦૨૪ માં — આ વખતે મહુમદે પોતાની છેલ્લી ચઢાઇ ગુજરાતમાં સોમનાથ પર કરી, અને ત્યાંનું અતિ સુંદર દેહેરું લૂટ્યું. લણુ દિવસ સુધી લડાઇ ચાલી, અને ભેકે તેના ખચાવ કરવાને યાનુંડના પાટવીકુંવર વલ્લભસેન, તેના ભિતિનો ભી-મદેવ, અને બીન્ન રજપૂત રાજ્ય તથા સરદારા આ-ન્યો હતા, તાપણુ આખરે મહુમદ જિત્યા. આ દેહું લગભગ સા વરસ સુધી ભાંગી હાલતમાં પડી

રહ્યું, અને પછી કુમારપાળ, જે ૧૧૬૬ માં મરણ પામ્ચો, તેણે પાછું સમરાવ્યું.

મહુમદની મરજ ગિઝનીની ગાદી પાતાના પુન મસુદને આપી ગુજરાતમાં પાતે રાજ કરવાની હતી; પણ લશ્કરના સરદારાના સમજાવ્યાથી તે વિચાર તેણે છેાડી દીધા અને ત્યાં કાઈ પાદશાહી કુટુંબના બા क्षणु ने सूजे। દરાવી ગિઝની જવા નિકહ્યો. અજ-भेरने। राज्न એક भारा सक्षर सहित रस्ते। रेाधी ખેઠા છે તે સાંભળીને તેની સામે ન થતાં મહુમદે सिंधना रस्ता क्षीं। अध्यान रस्ता हेणाउनार लाभीयाने। वेष धारण हरी आवनार सामनाथना કાઈ બાસણ હતા. તેણે મુસલમાના પર વેર લેવાન तेमने वण दिवस अने रात रणोभां रणडाव्या लेथी तेमनां हुन्तरे। माण्य भाराङ अने पाणी न મળવાથી મરણ પાન્યાં. આખરે ઘણી મુશકેલીથી મહ્મદ ગિઝની જઇ પાહાંચ્ચા.

મહ્મદ ગિઝનલી ઇ લ ૧૦૩૦ માં તેની દ્રુ વરસની વચે ગિઝનીમાં મરણ પામ્ચો. એણે વિદ્યા અને હુન્નરને બહુ ઉત્તેજન આપ્યું. એના વખતમાં વિખ્યાત ઇરાની કવિ ફિરદાેસી થઇ ગયો. એના મરણ પછી ગિઝનીની ગાદીને માટે એના બે છેાકરા —મહ્મદ અને મસુદ—વહેયા, જેમાં મસુદે પાતાના

ભાઇને આંધળા કર્યો, અને પછી રાજ્ય કરવા લા-ગ્યો. મસુદ પછી બીજા કેટલાક રાજાઓ થયા, જેઓ માંદ્રામાં દે વહી નાશ પામ્યા, અને પંજાબ શિવાય સઘળી જગ્યા ખાઇ બેઠા. ગિઝનીની ગાદીએ ઇ સ ૧૧૧૫ માં છેલ્લો રાજ્ય બેરામ હતા. એણે પો-તાની છેાકરી ઘોર વંશના એક રાજ્યને પરણાવી હતી. તેમની વચ્ચે કંઇ ભાંજગડ ઉઠવાથી ખેરાને પાતાના જમાઇને મારી નાંખ્યો. આથી મરનારના ભાઇ અલાઉદ્દીન ઘોરીએ એના રાજ્યમાં માટા લશ્કર સાથે કુચ કરી, અને ગિઝની જે મહુમદે હિંદ્રસ્તાનની મેળવેલી લૂટાથી ખહુ રળિયા માર્યું કરી નાંખ્યું હતું તે સાત દિવસ સુધી લૂટી ખાળી નાંખ્યું, ૧૧૫૨. આ ઉપરથી અલાઉદ્દીન "જહાંસૂઝ" એટલે દુનિયા બાળનારના નામથી એાળખાના લાગ્યો. બેરામ હિંદ્રસ્તાન નાસી આવવા નિકળ્યો, પણ રસ્તામાંજ મરણ પાચ્ચો. ખેરામ પછી એના છે ાકરા ખુસર, अने पछी अना पील भुसर्मलें साहारमा राज्य કર્યું. આ પછી અલાઉદૃીન ઘોરીના ભનિલ્ન શાહ-युद्रीन अथवा भूदभह धोरी से तेना द्राथमांथी का-હાર પણ જીતી લીધું. આ પ્રમાણે ગિઝની વંશની समाप्ति थर्ध ४० स० ११८६.

The Ghori Dynasty.

અલાઉદ્દીન ધોરીના ભનિન શાહ્યુદ્દીન અથવા મહ્મદ ધોરીએ ગિઝની વંશના છેલ્લા પાદશાહ ખુસરૂ મલેક પર ૧૧૮૬ માં ચઢાઇ કરીને લાહોર જીતી લીધું. આ વખતે હિંદુસ્તાનમાં ચાર માટાં રજપૂત રાજ્યો હતાં—દિલ્હીમાં તુવાર, અજમેરમાં ચાહાણ, કનાજમાં રાઠોડ, અને ગુજરાતમાં વાધેલા વંશના રજપૂતા રાજય કરતા હતા. દિલ્હીના તુવાર રાજ્નને કંઈ સંતાન ન હાવાથી તેણે અજ નેરના કુંવર પુથુરાજને દત્તક કરી લીધો, જેથી પુથુરાજ દિલ્હી तेमल अलमेरना रालयना पंशी थयो. लयारे મહુમદ ઘોરીએ દિલ્હી ઉપર ૧૧૯૧ માં ચઢાઇ કરી, त्यारे आ पृथुराल तेनी साभी थयो अने तेने પાણીપતના મેંદાનમાં હરાવ્યો. આ પછી રજપૂતા માંહામાં હે લડી ઘણા નખલા પડી ગયો. કનાજના રાજ્નના કુંવર જયચંદ, જે પૃથુરાજના મસીઆઇ ભાઇ હતો, તેણે પૃથુરાજની અદેખાઇ કરી, અને તેની સામે લાંબા વખત સુધી લડચો. મહુમદ ઘોત્રી ૧૧૯૧ માં હાર ખાધા પછી ગિઝની ગયો હતા, તે રજપ્તાને નખળા થઇ ગયલો જ્નેઇ ૧૧૯૩ માં એક નાટાં લશ્કર સહિત પાછા હિંદસ્તાન પર ચઢી આ-વ્યો. પૃથુરાજ પાછે ા એની સામા થયો; પણ ૧૧૯૩

માં સ્થાનેશ્વરના મેદાનમાં એ હારી ગયો ને દુશ્મન-ના હાથમાં પકડાચો, જેણે એને માત્રી નૈખાવ્યો. त्यार पछी महमहे अलभेर सूरयुँ, अने सेना ગુલામ કુતુખુદ્દીનને ત્યાંનો સૂખો નિની એ પાછે! ગિઝની गयो. એક વરસ પછી પાછી હિંદ્રસ્તાન ઉપર એણે ચહાઇ કરી, અને કનોજ तथा जनारस છતી લીધાં. કનોજના રાઠોડ રજપૂતો મારવાડમાં नाभी गया भने त्यां तेभोभे राज्य यक्षान्युं. મહ્મદ ઘોરીએ આ પછી ગુજરાત, અચો^દયા, ખંગાળા, અને ખહાર છતી લીધા. એણે હિંદુસ્તાન પર બંધી* મળી ૯ સ્વારીઓ કરી. ઈ. સ. ૧૨૦૬ માં ગિઝની જતાં પંજાબની ઉત્તર તરફના ગખકર नामे भाणभाती भेड पाहाडी नतना डेटसाड सी-કોએ એના તંખુમાં ધુસી જઇ એને મારી નાંખ્યો. એના મરણુથી ઘોરી વૈશની સમાપ્તિ થઇ.

III. AKBAR.

હુમાયુંના છે કરા અકખર ઇ. સ. ૧૫૪૩ માં અમરકાટમાં જન્મ્યો હતો. એનું ખર્ર નામ જલા-લુદ્દીન હતું. એ પોતાના જન્મથી તે ઇ. સ. ૧૫૫૫ સુધી કંદહાર અને કાલુલમાં રહ્યો હતો. જ્યારે

^{* &#}x27;All united,' i.e. in all, altogether.

ड्नार्यं भरण पाम्यो, त्यारे से भाव १३ वरसनी વચનો હતો. આ કારણને માટે પાંચ વરસ સુધી સદ્યળો રાજકારભાર એના પૂર્ધાન ખેરાને ચલાવ્યો. સિકંદર સુર અને મહ્મદ આદિલશાહનો વજર હેં મુ અકખરની સામે લડવાને એક માટું લશ્કર લઇ ગયા. પેહેલાં હેમુએ કેટલીક જગ્યા ઘણી બાહાદ્રી-થી લડાઈ કરીને છતી લીધી, પણ પાછળથી પાણી-पतना मेहानमां भेरामे तेने हुरान्यो, अने भारी નાંખ્યો ઈ. સ. ૧૫૫૬. સિકંદર પણ થાડા વખતમાં અકખરને તાળે થયો. ઈ. સ. ૧૫૮૦ માં અકખરે પાતાના પ્રધાનના હાથમાંથી ૧૮ વરસની વચે સઘળી સત્તા છીનવી લીધી, કારણ કે એ ગર્વિષ્ટ અને તીખા સ્વભાવનો થયો હતો એટલુંજ* નહીં પણ પોતાની सत्तानी गेरिपयोग करवा लाज्यो हती. जेराने પાતાની સત્તા ખોવાથી એક બંડ ઉઠાવ્યું, પણ અક-ખરે તુરત તે ખેસાડી દીધું. આ પછી ખેરામ મક્કે† જવા નિકળ્યો પણ ગુજરાતમાં તેને મુખારકખાં નામના કાેઇ પઠાણે માત્રી નાંખ્યો ઇ. સ. ૧૫૮૦.

ખાન છે માન, રાજ બાહાદુર, આદમખાં, અબદુલ ખાં અને બીજા ત્રણ મુસલ માન સરદારા અકબરની સત્તા સામા થયા, અને બંડ ઉઠાવ્યાં. અકબર એ

^{*} V. Gr., Cap. VI., § 3.

[†] V. Gr., Cap. VI., § 5, p. 82.

सधणा साने सात वरस सुधी लड़यो, अने तेमने वश क्यों (१५६०—१५६७).

गा पछी भा पादशाह लेपुरना राज्य लारमस, हिरेपुर (चितोऽ) ना संग राज्यना छे। इरा हिर्यसिंग, भने जेपपुरना राज्य मासरेन जोडे १पर्७—१प७२ सुधी सड़यो, भने चितोड छती सर्ध महणर जेध-पुरना राज्य मासरेननी छे। इरी जोडे परण्यो. जैहां-गीर भा राण्योनो इंनर हतो. लेपुरना राज्य लग-नानरासे पण् महणरने इन्या हीधी. भा राज्यभे तेमल तेना इंनर मानिसंगे महस्यापी, भने तेमो भा पारशाह्यी पहु मान पान्या. महले सद्यणा रलपूत राज्यभोने नश इर्यो पाइण्यी पोताना राज्यनो द्यां भरी, पण् तेमोंभे पाछण्यी पोताना राज्यनो द्यां भरी, भने हिपुर राज्यांनी इरी.

અકખરે પાતાનાં # લાંખાં રાજ્યમાં ગએલી જગ્યા-આ પાછી જીતી લીધી અને ઘણી નવી જીતો મેળવી.

૧૫૯૫—અકબરે અહુમદનગર જીતવાને પોતાના છોકરા મોરાદ અને એના આગલા વજર બેરામ-ના છોકરા મિરજાખાંને મોકલ્યા, પણ ત્યાંની રાણી યાંદબીબીએ ઘણી બાહાદ્રીથી તે જચાનો બચાન

^{*} For the nasal n added to these two words, V. Gr., p. 31, note *.

કર્યા, અને મોરાદ અને નિરજ્યાંના લશ્કરને મારી કાઢ્યું. આખરે ૧૫૯૯ માં જયારે એ રાણીનું તેણીના વેરીઓએ ખુન કર્યું, ત્યારે ત્યાંની થોડીક જગ્યા અકખરે છતી લીધી, અને ચાંદબીબીના છેાકરા નિઝામશાહને ગ્વાલિયરના કિલ્લામાં કેદ કર્યો; બાકીની થોડીક જગ્યા ત્યાંના હબસી નછર મલીક-અંખરે પોતાના મરણ (૧૬૨૬) સુધી બચાવી રાખી. આ જગ્યા પણ આખરે અકબરના પોલ શાહજહાંએ ૧૬૩૭ માં છતી લીધી.

भा प्रभाणे आ पादशाहे पातानी सत्ता धणी हेसावी, तेमल पातानी रैयतने धणी सुभी हरी. कैंधा मुससमान राज्न भामां भे उत्तम राज्न हतो. भेणे हिंदुओ उपरनी ल्ला नेरें। हाडी नांण्यो, भने धर्मने मारे हांछने पीडा हरी नहीं. पाते धणो लाणेसा होवाथी दरें जतनी विद्याने भे उत्तल आपतो. भेणे मेहेसूस सेवानी रीतमां सुंधारे। हर्थों, हिंदुओने तेमनी सायशी प्रभाणे उत्या भोसा आप्या, गेरवालणी हरें। हाडी नांण्या, भने सती थवानी माही यासनो सरहाव हर्यों. सहलर ना वभतमां धणाह महान पुर्धो हता, लेमां मुण्य राज्न रोडरमस नामे भेह हिंदु, ले मेहेसूस भातानो वड़ो हतो ते, सने भे पादशाहनो वळर स्थुसहळस लेणे "आधने सहलरी" नामना

पुश्तक्षमां अक्ष्यर नुं कम यरित सण्युं छे, तेओ हता. अक्ष्यर ने तणु छे। करा हता—(१) ससीम केणे १६०१ मां पोताना जाप सामेक जंड उंडान्युं हुनुं, अने के अक्ष्यर पछी गाही में जेही, (२) मोराह के १५७४ मां मरणु पाच्यो, अने (३) हानियास के १६०४ मां मरणु पाच्यो. भेनो वडी पुत ससीम सारी यासनो न होनाथी अक्ष्यर ने घणुं हुः भ सागनुं, तोपणु मरती नेजा भेणुं पोताना सघणा उमराने जोसावी तेमना हे भेजां ससीमने राज्यनो नारस हरान्यो, केथी करीने हे भेनां मरणु पछी राज्यमां गाही मारे कांछ जभेडा थाय नहीं. अक्ष्यर छ स. १६०५ मां मरणु पाच्यो. भेनी सास आन्ग्रामां हारनामां आपी हती.

JAHĀNGĪR.

અકખરના વડા છે કરા સલીને ગાદીએ બેસતાં નંહાંગીર એટલે "દુનિયા જીતનાર" એવું નામ ધારણ કર્યું. એણે અહમદનગર, બિન્નપુર અને ગોવળકોંડાના રાજ્યોપર હુમલો કરી ખંડણી લીધી, અને એના છે કરા શાહજહાંએ ઉદેપુર ઉપર હુમલો

^{* &#}x27;In their presence,' 'when they were looking on.'

^{† &#}x27;With this object in view that,' etc.

કરી त्यांना राणाने હराव्यो. आरंभभां सक्षीने એના બાપનાં શ્રીધેલાં સર્વ કામો જારી રાખ્યાં, પણ પાછુળથી તેમ કર્યું નહીં. ઇ. સ. ૧૨૧૧ માં જ્નંહાંગીર નુરજહાં સાથે પરણ્યો. નુરજહાં અયા જ નામના કોઈ ગરીબ ઈરાની ઉમરાવની ઘણી રૂપાળી બેટી અકખરનાં જનાનખાનામાં તેણીની મા જ્નેડે જતી. क्यारे अडणर छवती हती त्यारे सली ने तेने જ્નેઇ ને તેની સાથે પરણવા માગ્યું, પણ અકબરે તેમ न करतां तेने शीर अक्षान नामना ओक पाहाहर હાકેમ સાથે પરણાવી. જ્યારે સલીમ ગાદીએ બેઠો त्यारे तेण्यीनी साथे परण्याना वियारथी तेण्याना ભરથારને તેણે સમનનવ્યો; પણ જયારે તેણે તેમ કરવા ના કહી ત્યારે જ્વંહાંગીરે તેને મારી નખાવ્યો. આથી નુરજહાં ઘણી ગુસ્સે થઈ, પણ આખરે થોડા વખતમાં તેણી સલીમ જોડે પરણી, અને તેણીના ખાપ અને ભાઇને તેણીએ મોટી મોટી પદ્રીઓ અષાવી. સલીમને પોતાના છોકરાઓથી ભારે દૃ:ખ ખનવું પડ્યું હતું. એના વડા છોકરા ખુસરૂએ એની સાને બંડ ઉઠાવ્યું, પણ તે આ પાદશાહે તુરત બેસાડી દીધું, અને ખુસર્ને ગ્વાલિચરના કિલ્રામાં કેઠ કર્યો, लयां ते १६२१ मां भरण पाम्यों. भेनो जीने છોકરો પરવીઝ જેને એણે દક્ષિણનો સળો બનાવ્યો હતો તે ૧૬૨૬ માં મરણ પાચ્ચો. ઇ. સ. ૧૬૨૩ માં એના નીજા છોકરા શાહજહાંએ પણ બંડ ઉઠાવ્યું, કારણ કે સલીમની મરજ પોતાના ચોથા છોકરા શહેરિયારને ગાદી આપવાની હતી.

ઈ. સ. ૧૬૨૫ માં નુરજહાંને મોહોબતખાં નામ-ના એક અનીર બેડે કજીઓ થયો, કારણ કે એ અનીરે સલીમના બીજા છોકરા પરવી જોનો પક્ષ કર્યો હતો. वुरबहाँ भेगापर भोश तीहोमतो मुडी भेने धणी सतान्यो, तेथी या याचीरे ५,००० रलप्त સ્વારો લઇ સલીમને કેદ કર્યો ૧૬૨૬. નુરજહાંએ સલીમને છોડવવાના ઘણાક ઉપાયો લીધા, અને આખરે તેને છોડન્યો. કેદમાંથી છુટયા પછી તે થોડા वणतमां क्राश्नीरथी लाहोर जतां तेनी द् वरसनी वये ध. स. १६२७ मां भर्णु पान्यो. आ राज्ननी દરભારમાં ઇ. સ. ૧૨૦૭ માં "કમ્પત્રીએ" કેપ્તન होिडिन्स नामना એક गृहस्थने भोडस्यो हतो; अने પછી ઈંગ્લાંડના પેહેલાં જેમ્સ રાજ્ય તરફથી અંગ્રેજી એલચી સર ટોમસ રો ૧૮૧૫ માં આવ્યો હતો. એ णन्ने ने सली ने पेहें सारी आवडार ही थी, पण પાછળથી મોકિળખાં નામના સૂળાના, તેમજ નુર-लहांनी लार्ड असीइणां ले वर्णर थयी हती तेना, અને સલીમના છોકરા શાહ્જહાંના સમનનવાથી પાદશાહે તેમને દરભાર છોડી જવાનો હુકમ કર્યો. . સલીમ સમજણવાળો અને ઇનસાફી પણ દારૂડી- ઓ હતો. પોતાની રૈપતની ફરિયાદ પોતે સાંભળ-વાને માટે પોતાના ઓરડાની અંદરથી તે જમીન સુધી એક લાંબી સાંકળ રાખતો; જે સાંકળનો છેડો તેના મેહેલમાં હતો તેની સાથે ઘંટો ખાંધેલા હતા; માટે જયારે કોઇ ફરિયાદ કરવા જતો, ત્યારે તે સાંકળ તે ખેંચતો, જેથી ઘંટોનો અવાજ થતો, અને પાદશાહ તે માણુસને પોતાની આગળ બોલાવીને તેની ફરિયાદ સાંભળી લેતો.

AURANGZEB.

ઈ. સ. ૧૬૫૭ માં શાહજહાં ઘણો માંદો પડયો, ત્યારે દારા તેના ખાપ પાસે આગ્રે હતો, સુન્ન ખંગાળામાં, ઔરંગજેખ દક્ષિણમાં, અને મુરાદ ગુજરાતમાં હકુમત ચલાવતા હતા.

જયારે આ છોકરાઓએ પોતાના બાપના મંદ-વાડના સમાચાર સાંભળ્યા, ત્યારે સુજા અને મુરાદે ગાદીના ધણી થવાના વિચારથી પાયતખ્ત ભણી કુચ કરી. ઔરંબજેબ, ગોવળકાંડાના મુખ્યાત સરદાર મિરજીમલાને પોતાના પક્ષમાં લઇ, પોતાના બેવ-કુફ ભાઇ મુરાદ સાથે મળી ગયો, અને તેને સમ-જાન્યું કે મારે તો મક્કે જઇ બક્તિ કરી મારો વખત કાઢવો છે; પણ હું એમ કર્ફ તે પેહેલાં મારી ઇચ્છા તને ગાદી અપાવવાની છે, કારણ કે તારા શિવાય

બિજા ભાઈઓ રાજ્ય ચલાવવાને ચોગ્ય નથી. મુરાદે ઔરંગજેખના બોલવા પર પૂર ભરાસા રાખ્યો, અને તેની સાથે મળી ગયો. પેહેલાં દારાએ પોતાના ભાઇ સુજાને ૧૬૫૭ માં કાશી આગળ હરાવ્યો; પણ ૧૨૫૮ માં ઔરંગજેખ અને મુરાદે દારાના સેનાપતિ જસવૈતસિંહને પેહેલાં ઉજજેણ આગળ, અને પછી તેજ વરસમાં દારાને આગા આગળ હરાવ્યો. એમ કહેલે કે દારાના હાથીને કંઈ લાગ્યાથી તે ઘણો મસ્તાન થયો, માટે દારા નીચે ઉતરી પડ્યો; પણ લશ્કરને તે વિષે કંઇ ખબર न होवाथी, तेमल वणी हाथीने आसी जीवाथी, તેઓએ એમ વિચાર્યું કે દારા માર્યો ગયો—અને તેથી તેઓ સઘળા નાસી ગયા. દારા આગા આગળ હારી ગયા પછી દિલ્હીમાં નાસી ગયો. ઔરંગજેબ आ इते ह नेणव्या पछी तुरत पोताना जाप असी-મને એક કિઇ્લામાં પૂર્વો, અને દારાની પુઠે દિલ્હી गयो. रक्ते बता भौगरं केले मुरादने हेद हथाँ, અને દિલ્હીમાં પોતાના નામની દ્વાઇ ફેરવી ઇ.સ. १६ ५८.

શાહુજહાં ૧૬૬૮ માં બંદીખાને રહીને મૂઓ. તાજમેહેલ જે એક અતિ સુંદર ઇમારત છે, તે આ પાદશાહે પોતાની બેગમ મુમતાજમહાલની યાદગાત્રી સાર્બધાવ્યો હતો.

ઔરંગજેબ અથવા આલમગિર પેહેલાએ પો-ताना ભાઇઓને દગાથી તેમજ ખુલૂી રીતે લડાઇ-ઓ કરીને વશ કર્યા: — દારા જ્યારે મુલતાનથી नाभी जतो हतो, त्यारे तेने त्यांना भूणा जहान-ખાંએ પકડી ઔરંગજેબ પાસે મોકલાવી આપ્યો, જેણે ૧૬૫૯ માં તેને મારી નંખાવ્યો. સુન્ન ૧૬૫૯ માં કજવાની લડાઇમાં હારી જઇ આરાકાન નાસી ગયો, જ્યાં તે ૧૬૬૦ માં મરણ પાખ્યો; અને મુરાદને કંઈ ખહાનું કાઢી ૧૮૮૧ માં માત્રી નાંખ્યો. આ પ્રમાણે એણે પોતાના હરીફોને મારી નાંખી "આલમગિર" અથવા દુનિયાં જીતનારનાં નામથી રાજ્ય ચિત્રહો ધારણ કર્યાં. શાહજહાંને બંદીખાનેથી છેાડવવાને જોધપુરના રાજ્ન જસવંતસિંહે અને બીજા કેટલાકોએ પુક્તિઓ કરી હતી પણ તેમાં તેઓ इाव्या न हता.

ઓરંગજેએ પોતાના ખાપથી ઉલઠી ત્રીતે ચાલીને હિંદુઓ ઉપર ભારે વેરા નાંખ્યો, અને તેમનાં દેહેરાં લૂઠી તેમના ઉપર ઘણી તરેહના ધર્મ સંબંધી જીલમો ગુજાર્યા. આથી તેનાં રાજ્યમાં શાંતી રહી નહીં. દિંલહીની નૈર્ત્ય કાેણે નારાળ ગામમાં સતરામી નામના હિંદુઓએ બંડ ઉઠાવ્યું, અને ઓરંગજેબનાં લશ્કરને ઘણીકવાર માત્રી હાંકી કાઢયું. આપરે જયારે એ રાજ્ય પોતે એક લશ્કર લઇ ત્યાં

गयो, अने तेमने हरान्या, त्यारे तेओ ताले थया, ध. स. १६७६.

निधपुरवा राज्य असवतिसिंहे भौरंग बेणने हिन्म-તથી એક કાગળ લખી હિંદુઓ પર જીલમ નહીં ચુન્નર-વાને સમજ્નવ્યો; પણ આ પાદશાહે તે ઉપર કંઇ ધ્યાન આપ્યું નહીં, એટકુંજ નહીં, પણ ૧૮૭૭ માં જસવંતસિંહના મરણ પછી એ તેની સ્વી અને બે કુંવરાે ઉપર પણ જુલમ ગુન્નરવા લાગ્યો; આથી જેપુરના રાજ્ય રામસિંહ, મેવાડના રાજસિંહ, અને બીન્ન ઘણાક રજપૂત રાજ્યઓ ઔરંગજેબની સામા* થયા. એમને વશ કરવાને પાદશાહે પોતાના છેાક-રા મોઆ જમ, આજમ, અને અકબરને એક મોટું લશ્કर आपी मोडल्या, केमोमे तेमने हरायी तेम-ના ઉપર ખહુ જીલમ ગુજાયોં. ઔરંગજેખે ૧૬૮૩— ૧७०७ સુધી દક્ષિણમાં લડાઈઓ ચલાવી અને ૧૮૮૬ માં સિકંદર આદિલશાહને હરાવીને બિજાપુર, ૧૬૮૭ માં અખુલહ્સેનને હ્રાવીને ગોવળકાંડા, અને ૧७०० માં સતારા છતી લીધાં. ઇ. સ. ૧७०૧ માં અગ્રેછ એલચી સર વિલિયમ નોરિસે ઔરંગજેબની ભેટ લીધી હતી. આ પાદશાહે પોતાની સત્તા છેક કન્યાકુ-મારિ સુધી ફેલાવી, અને જમાળધીની ઉપજના ૩૬

^{*} Notice that this adj. sāmo requires the fem. gen. (-nī) before it

કરોડ રિપિયા વસુલ કર્યા. એના જીલમને લીધે રજપૂતો, જેઓ લાંબો વખત* થયો મોગલ વંશ-ના રાજ્યઓના મિત્ર હતા, અને લંડાઈને વખતે તેમને મદદ કરતા, તે લોકો તેમજ મરેઠા લોકો એના કટ્ટા વેરી થયા, જેમને એ મરણ પામ્યો † ત્યાંસુધી વશ કરી શકયો નહીં. ઔરંગજેબ ૧૯૦૯ માં અહમદનગરમાં પોતાની ૮૯ વરસની વચે મરણ પામ્યો.

ઓરંગજેખને પાંચ શાહુન દા હતા— મહુમદ જે ૧૬૬૭ માં ગ્વાલિયરમાં મરણું પાગ્યો, મોઆછમ, અકળર, આજમ, અને કામળક્ષા મોઆછમ શાહુઆલમ પહેલાના નામથી ગાદીએ બેઠા આજમ એની સામો થયો, પણ ૧૭૦૦ માં આગા આગળની લડાઈમાં માર્યો ગયો. કામળક્ષ પણ મોઆછમ સામો લડવા ગયો પણ ૧૭૦૮ માં હૈદ્રાબાદની લડાઇમાં માર્યો ગયો.

IV. HAIDAR 'ALĪ.

હૈદર ઇ. સ. ૧૭૦૨ માં જન્યો હતો. એ મહૈસૂર-માં હિંદુ રાજાના ઘોડે ‡સ્વાર લશ્કરના એક અમલ-દારનો છાકરા હતો. મહૈસૂરના રાજાની નોકરીમાં

^{* &#}x27;For a long time since.'

^{+ &#}x27;Up to the time he died,' i.e. 'as long as he lived.'

I 'Mounted on horseback.'

એ ૨૧ વરસની વચે દાખલ થયો. થોડા વખતમાં એ પોતાની ચાલાકીથી ઊંચી પદ્રીએ ચઢચો. લૂટ, લ્ચ્યાઇ, અને દગાઇથી એણે મોટું લશ્કર અને ઘણા पैसा अंधा धरी महिसूरना प्रधान नन्दराल, लेना हाथ नीये मे नोडरी डरतो हतो, तेने दूर ड्यों, अने राज्य तेमल वन्दरालने * वरस द्हार योडस २५ न आपवा * इंधिने पीते महै सूरनी धंणी थयो ઇ. સ. ૧૭૬૧. ૧૭૬૩ માં એણે ખડનારનો કિલ્લો લીધો. ચોથા પેજા માધવરાવે એનું બળ ઘણું વધેતું બ્નેઇન એના ઉપર એક મોટું લશ્કર લઇ જઇ એને सभत हार आपी, लेथी भेने मरेहाओने उर साभ રૂપિયા આપવા પડ્યા. ૧૭૮૮ માં એણે કાલિકટ જ્ત્યું. આ ફતેહથી નિઝામ અને મરેઠાઓએ સંપ કરી હૈદરનું સઘળું રાજ લઇ લેવાનો વિચાર કર્યો; પણ હૈદર તેમને લાંચ આપી ખચી ગયો. હિંદરે હવે અંગુે જેનાં રાજ ઉપર હુમલો કર્યો, પણ કર્વલ रिभथे तेने १७६७ मां यंगाम अने विनोमासी આગળ હરાવ્યો. અન્ખુરગઢ ઉપર પણ હુમલા કરવામાં હૈદર હારી ગયો. આવી હાર થયાથી એ એક મોટું લશ્કર લઇ કર્ણાટક પાયમાલ કરી છેક भद्रास तरह वधी गयो अने अंग्रेड सक्षरने भारी विभेरी गाँण्युं. या इते हथी हैं हरे हवे भरेडानी

^{* &#}x27;To give precisely a year and a day's allowance (of notice).'

જુસરી માંથી નિકળી જવાની તૈયારી કરી, પણ ઇ.સ. ૧૭૭૨ માં ચેરકુલીની લડાઈમાં મરેઠા સરદાર લિંબ-કરાવે तेने समत हार भवाडी, लेथी तेने भरेडा-ઓને ૩૮ લાખ રૂપિયા અને કેટલીક જગ્યાઓ આપવી પડી. જ્યારે મરેઠાઓ એનાં રાજ્ય પર यदी आव्या त्यारे मेणे १७६ ए नी मद्रासनी संधि પ્રમાણે અંગુજોની મદદ માંગી, પણ તેઓએ તેનું કંઈ સાંભળ્યું નહીં; આથી હૈદર તેમનો કટ્ટો દ્શ્મન થયો. મરેઠાઓની માંહોમાંહેની લડાઇથી હૈંદરે પાંચ વરસમાં પોતાની ખોએલી સઘળી જગ્યા પાછી છતી લીધી, અને એક ઘણું મોટ લશ્કર લઇ અંગ્રેલ્નની સાનો પાછા ગયો. કર્નલ ખેલી એની સાનો લડવા આવ્યો, પણ પોલીલારની પેહેલી લડાઈમાં તે હાત્રી ગયો, અને કેદ પકડાયો ઈ. સ. ૧૭૮૦. ૧૭૮૧ માં આચરકૂટ સરદારે પોર્ટોનોનો અને પછી શોલિ-ગરની લડાઇમાં હૈદરને હરાવ્યો. હૈદરે ૧૭૮૨ માં તેબીચરિ ઉપર હુમલા કર્યો, પણ ત્યાંના રેહેવાસી-ઓએ બાહાદ્રાથી ૧૮ માસ સુધી ટકાવ કર્યો, અને પછી મદદ મળતાંજ હૈદરનાં લશ્કર પર હુમલા કરી तेने हराव्यो, अने तेना १२०० भाणुसने जंदीवान કીર્ધાં. આ વગર ભણેલાે પણ શૂરાે માણસ ૧૯૮૨ માં પોતાની ૮૦ વરસની ઉમરે ચિતાડમાં મરણ पाभ्यो.

V. EXTRACTS FROM A GUJARĀTĪ NEWSPAPER.

[These extracts are written in Pārsī-Gujarātī, but, except that (1) they contain a few more Arabic and Persian words than ordinary Gujarātī, (2) that l continually takes the place of l, and par- of pra-, and (3) that y is occasionally omitted in the preterite of verbs, need little remark.* The English words and proper names which occur in them are not inserted in the Vocabulary. But, as the student may perhaps find them troublesome to recognise in their Gujarātī dress, we append a list of them here in the order in which they occur.

French = French. Yurop = Europe. Vāīsrāy = Viceroy. Kenedā = Canada. Depyntesan = Deputation. Frenchmen = Frenchman. Lard Granvil = Lord Granville. Peris = Paris. Brītīś=British. Frans=France. Edinbaro Rīvyu= { Edinburgh Review. Mi. Henri Riv = Mr. Henry Reeve. Dyuk ov Bedford = { Duke of Bedford. Sar Chārlas Dīlk= { Sir Charles Dilke. Setarde Rivyu - Saturday Review. Sentsbarī-Saintsbury.

Lārd Sālsbarī = Lord Salisbury. Lard Rozbari = Lord Roseberry. $L\bar{a}r\dot{q}$ $B\bar{i}kansf\bar{i}l\dot{q} = \begin{cases} Lord \\ Beaconsfield. \end{cases}$ Mājistret = Magistrate. Mī. Kupar = Mr. Cooper. Polis = Police. Kānstebal = Constable. Nelmas = Nelmes. Solisitar = Solicitor. Mī. Lītal = Mr. Little. Aspītal = Hospital. Līst = list. Karonar = Coroner. $\frac{\text{Se\'sans kamīt}}{(\text{karvu\~n})} = \begin{cases} \text{to commit to} \\ \text{the Sessions.} \end{cases}$ Kalāke=o'clock.]

^{*} But we may also notice that such phrases as (1) "amo jatāň hatāň" etc. for ame jatā hatā, and also (2) "agarjo mane khabar hate to kadī bī huň tyāň... sute nahī," for jo mane khabar hot, to kadī paṇ huň tyāň... sutī nahot, are Pārsī peculiarities. In the first phrase the verb is not neuter but masc. with a nasal sound attached.

1.—સફાઇદાર અને સુધ ફરેંચ ભાશા બોલનાર ઇંગરેજો

ઇંગરેજો કરેંચોના પાડોશી છે અને એક નેક સાથે वेपार धंधा वगेरेनी आओ संलंध होवाथी तथा ચૂરાપમાં સંધે ફરેંચ ભાશા સાધારણ હોવાથી, ઘણા-ખરા ઈંગરેજો ફરેંચ શીખે છે પણ તે શુંવ ઉચારે अने वया ५२ श है ३ ढीनी लुस यु ५ वगर थो डा भो ज ખોલી શકે છે અને તેઓ નવાઇના નમુના ગણાય છે. તેવાઓમાં એક આપણા નામદાર વાઇસરાય છે. તેવણ કેનેડાના વાઇસરાય હતા તે વખતે એક इरेंच डेपच्डेशन तेमने मानपतर आपना आनयुं तेनो जवाल आपतां तेवणे सेवी सरस इरेंच ભાશા વાપરી કે પેહેલા બે તરણ બોલો તેમનાં મોહમાંથી ખહાર પડતાંજ ડેપયુટેશનના ગરહસ —થોએ હરખના પોકાર કરવા માંડયા પણ તેવણના ममावा इरेथमेन हता अने तथी इरेथनी भे શુધતા તેવણમાં ઓધે ઉતરી છે. લારડ ગરાન-વીલ ખી સારી છુટાથી ફરેંચ બોલે છે. તેવણના પીતા પેરીસ ખાતે બરીડીશ એલચી તરીકે ઘણાં વરસ રહેલા હતા અને તેવણ જોડે લારડ ગરાનવીલે બી लवानीनी धणी वलत इरांसमां गुन्नरयो हते। तथा वसी तेमनी पेहेंसी जायडी जी नते हरेंच हती.

આથી તેવણને ફરેંચ ભાશા અને ફરેંચ પરજાનો धणी सरस अनुलव छे अने परहेश भातांना पर-धान हता ते वणते से समुलव तेमने पड़ डाम લાગો હતો. ઈંગલંડમાં તેવણ ફરેંચ ભાશાના ખાં गणाय छे पण तेवण पीते ते भाग गा पारी इहिछे કે તેમનું ભંડોલ ઉંડું નહી પણ બાહેરનું છે. વચા-કરણાનું શુધપાળું, ઉચારની સફાઇ અને છુટાદાર હપની મદદથી તેવણાનું એ ભાશાનું થોડું જ્ઞાન દેખઇ-તું વધારે લાગે છે. પણ ઇંગરેજો માં સઉથી સરસ इरेथ लाशा जोसनार मेरीनजरो रीनयुनी अधी-લગભગ એવાજ સરસ ફરેંચના ખાં છે, પણ તેવણ એવી ખુણે પડેલી ઈંદગી ગુજારે છે કે તેમનાં ભંડોલ-नो साल द्वयाने मसतो नथी. सर यारसस शिसक છટાથી અને શુધ ફરેચ બોલે છે પણ તેમના ઉચારો મન માનતા નથી. "સેટરડે રીવયુ" નો અધીપતી મીં સેન્ટસખરી ફરેચ ખોલવામાં ઝાઝો કુશલ નથી પણ ફરેંચ સાહીતચનું ભંડોલ તેનામાં જખરૂં છે. લારડ સાલસખરી છુટાથી ફરેંચ બોલે છે પણ ઉચાર અને જાતીમાં ઝૂરાર્બંધ ભુલો કરે છે, લારડ રોઝ-ખરી ધીરે ધીરે અને સંભાલથી બોલે છે. લારડ જયારજ હેમીલટન ફરેંચ બળાતા નથી અને એ કાર-ણને લીધે તો ૧૮૭૪માં લારડ બીકનસફીલકે તેવણને

પરદેશખાતાં નાયખ પરધાનપદ આપવા માગયું તે લેવા તેઓએ ના પાડી હતી.

2.—અંબાળપણે ખુન કરવાનો આરોપ.

ગઇ પરમ દીને વડા માછસટરેટ મીં કૃપર સન-મુખ પોલીસ ફોજના કાનસટેબલ મીં નેલમસે ના-રાયણ કેવારી નામના એક ઘોડાવાલાને બેદરકારીથી ગાંડી હાંકી ભાગી નામની એક છોકરીને કચડી નાંખી અંભણપણે ખુન કરવાના આરોપ માટે ઉભો કરયો હતો. સરકાર તરફથી મુકદમો ચલાવવાને સરકારી સોલીસીટર મીં લીટલ હાજર હતા. * * * *

અારોપીએ સાક્ષીને ઉલટપાલટ તપાસવાની ના પાડી હતી.

ली नी ना भनी स्ती भे भी बीरसनी तपास भां लेखां वयुं हे हुं भी भ भा गुं छुं. भरनार भा सी दी हरी थती हती. ते खी ने ना भा शी हतुं. ते खी नी उभर भे वर सनी हती. धी भी तसाव उपर भा वे सी भे हे या सी भा गल भे ह दी वसे सवार नां दश हसा हे रो री भा ग हुं भने भरनार सुतां हतां, भे वे सा भे भा ख थवानी हशी भुभ भार्या थीना, भारो पीनी गाडी तयां दा भस थ छ भने भभारा शरीर उपरथी पसार थ ग ग श हती. भे या सी ना भो रसानी जा जी हती. भे या सी ना भो रसानी जा शी ने रा

રસતા ઉપરથી દાખલ થઇ હતી. તે વેલાએ ફકત મારી આંખ લાગી હતી, હું સુઇ ગઇ ન હતી. જ્યારે भारी ही डरी भे (भरनारे) यी यारी पाडी, तयारे ड्रु સાવચેત થઇ. એ વેલાએ મેં આસપાસ જોયું, એટલે મને જણાયું કે મારી છોકરીને સખત ઇન્ન थि हती, तेमल मारो हाथ अयडायो हतो अने ગાડી પુર જોરમાં દોડતી હતી. મરનારનાં માર્થા ઉપર એથી ઇન્ન થઇ હતી. એ વેલાએ એક બીજો ली भारी भारी नल ही इसी सुती हती. भरनारने આસપીટલમાં લઇ જવામાં આવી હતી, એ વેલાએ તેણીનાં કાનમાંથી લોહી વેહેતું હતું. ખાદ તયાંજ તેણી મરણ પાંગી હતી. ગાડીવાલા (આરોપી) એ ખાજી થવાને કશી ખુમ ન પાડી હતી. મરનારને धन थर्ध ते आगमल तेणी तंदरोसत हासतमां हती. भने भजर न हती है ते रसता उपर गाडी धोडानी आवन्तव छे, अगरको भने भणर हते तो કદી બી હું તયાં (મરનાર) માત્રી છોકરી સાથે સુતે નહી. એ દીવસ સોમવારનો હતો જે પછી આજ સુધી બે સો મવારો પસાર થયા છે.

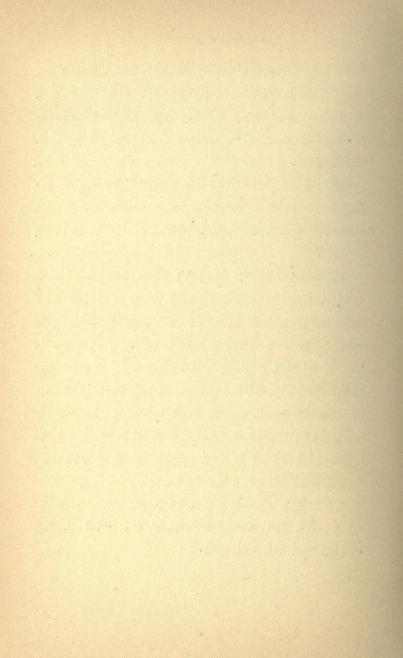
અારોષીએ જણાવયું કે સાક્ષીને ઉલટપાલટ તપા-સતો નથી મારી ગાડી દરવાજામાં દાખલ થઇ તે વેલાએ મને રસતા ઉપર સુતેલું કોઇ માલમ પડયું નહી.

જણાવયું કે હું પારસી ધરમગુર છું. આરોપીને ઓલખું છું, તે મારી સાથે તેડાં કરવા ગાડી હાંકતો હतो. आरोपी गाडी हेरवनार पारसीनी नोडरी-માં છે. પારસી સ્ત્રીઓ સાથે લગનનાં તેડાં કરવા આરોપીની ગાડીમાં અમો જતાં હતાં. એ વેલાએ सवारनो ६श క्याइनो वणत हतो. अभी वहाउ-યાની ચાલીમાં તેડાં કરવા માટે, વહાડયાનાં આત-શાળે હેરામને રસતેથી તયાં ગયાં હતાં. ડાળી ખાજી તરફના દરવાનનાં ગાડીએ વલાંણ લીધી તે વેલાએ ધીડો ચાલતો હતો. અમો અંદર (દરવાજાની) દા-ખલ થયાં, તે વેલાએ ધોડાવાલાએ ખુમ માત્રી તે મેં સાંબલી. કારણ કે તે વેલાએ તેડાંનાં લીસટ ઉપર આરૂં ધયાન ખેંચાયું હતું. તેણે ખુમ પાડી કે "ચાલ ખાજા." ખાજા થવાને માટે આરોપીએ ૮-૧૦ વરસની छोध्रीने लणावयं अने गाडी यासुल हती. अभी આગલ વધયા, તચાર ખાદ મને જણાયું કે કોઇના ઉપરથી ગાડી કરી ગઇ હતી, પણ તે કોણ હતું તેની મને ખબર પડી નહી. આરોપીને મેં જણાવયું કે આગલ હાંકવા આગમજ તે જોયું હતું કે નહી? अतरे में भरनारनी भाताने णुभ पाउती सांलखी હતી. સોનાપોરની ગલી આગલ સ્નીઓએ ઉતરી પડી તુરતવેલા તેડાં કરવાનું માંડીવાલયું, કારણ કે ઉપલા ખનાવથી તેમને અપસગન નડવા હતા. એ ખાદ પોલીસ સીપાઇ તથાં આવયો અને આરોપીને ગાડી સાથે લઇ ગયો હતો. ખાદ મરનારને કારો-નરની તપાસ વેલાએ જોઇ હતી, જેમાં મેં જુખાની આપી હતી.

ની બીટલે માછસટરેટથી જાણવા માગયું કે કા-રોનરે આરોપીની સેશનસ કમીટ કરચો છે, તચારે તમને આરોપીને જાનીન ઉપર છોડવાની સતા છે કે નહી?

भाछस्रेरेट — भें कारोनर एपर में वीशे लेपी लेखावयुं के आरोपीने जनीन एपर कां न छोड़नी? भने लेवाण भलयों छे के आरोपीमें मेवी क्शी अरल कारोनर सनमुण क्री न हती. हुं तेने इपया १०० ना जनीन एपर छोड़वानो हुक्त कर्र छुं. आरोपीने में हुक्त साथे कारोनर सनमुण भोक्सवामां आवशे मने लो तेवण दक्सत धारशे तो आरोपीने छोड़वानो हुक्त कर्रा. तेने मेक्स छोड़वानो हुक्त करवानी मने सता नथी, कारणु के कारोनरे आरोपीने सेशनस क्नीट करयों छे.

ગાડી ભાડે ફેરવનાર પેસતનજી એરલજી આરોપી-ના જાનીન થવાને કખુલ થયા હતા. એ પછી વધુ તપાસ મુલતવી રહી હતી.



PART III.

GUJARĀTĪ VOCABULARY TO THE READING LESSONS.

CONTRACTIONS.

Ar. = Arabic.

Eng. = English.

G. or Guj. = Gujarātī.

H. or Hind. = Hindī.

P. or Pers. = Persian.

Sk. or Sansk. = Sanskrit.

U. or Urd. = Urdū.

m., f., n. =masculine, feminine, neuter.

adj. = Adjective.

adv. = Adverb.

pr. n. = Proper name.

v. gr. = See Grammar.

postp. = Postposition.

Etc., etc., etc.

VOCABULARY.

A and A (અ and આ).

A, dem. adj., this, these (v. gr.).

Abdul Fāt Lodī, m., (Pers. عبد الله تع لودي), pr. n. of a chief of Mnltān.

Abdul Fazl, m. (Pers. عبدُ الفضل), pr. n. of the Vazīr of King Akbar.

Abdul Khāň, m. (Pers. وبدُ لكان), pr. n. of a Muḥammadan chief.

Abdullā, m. (Ar. عبد الله), pr. n. of an Arab.

Abdul Malik, m. (Ar. عبد الملك), pr. n. of a man.

Abdul Motāleb, m. (Ar. عبدُ الْمُطَّلَب), pr. n. of an Arab, 'Abdu'l Muttalib.

Abdul Rehemān, m. (Ar. عبدُ الرحمن), pr. n. of an Arab, 'Abdu'r Raḥmān.

Abhimān, n., pride, arrogance. Abrūdār, adj. (Pers. أبرودار), honorable.

Abū Bakar, m. (Ar. اَبُو بَكُر), pr. n. of an Arab, Abū Bakr.

Abūl Husen, m. (Ar. أَبُو الْحُسُون) pr. n. of a man, Abū'l Ḥusain.

Abū Tāleb, m. (Ar. أَبُو طَالِب), pr. n. of an Arab, Abū Tālib.

Adam Khāň, m. (Pers. اُدم خان), pr. n. of a Muḥammadan chief.

Adbhut, adj., wonderful, strange, narvellous.

Adekhāī, f., envy, jealousy; a., karvī, to envy.

Adhik, adj. and adv., more.

Adhikār, m., power, authority; right.

Adhipati, m., Editor (of a paper); ruler, master.

Adilśāh, m. (Pers. عادل شاء), pr. n. of a man.

Afgānastān, n. (Pers. افغانستان),
Afghānistān.

Agal, postp., before, in front of. Agamaj, adv., before, previously. Agar, conj., (Pers. 5), if.

Agarjo, conj., (Pers. اگر and Guj. jo), if.

Agatya, f., importance, need: agatya-no, (nī, nuñ), important.

Agiarm-o, -î, -nñ, num. adj., eleventh.

Agl-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., former.

Agnī, f., fire.

Agrā, n, the city of Agrā.

Ahmadnagar, n., the city of Ahmadnagar.

Aīne Akbarī (Pers. phrase أَيْنِهُ مَا), Mirror of Akbar.

Ajāeb, n. (Ar. Pl. عَجِيب from عَجِيب), wonders, wonderful things, miracles: adj, wondrous.

Ajāṇ-o, -ĩ, -uñ, adj., ignorant, (of $-th\bar{\imath}$).

Ajim, m. (Ar. عاظم), pr. n. of a son of Aurangzeb.

Ajmer, n., the city of Ajmere.

Ākār, m., form, shape.

Akāś, n., the sky, heaven; the æther.

Akbar, m., (Ar. اکبر), pr. n. Emperor Akbar.

Akhare, adv. (Ar. آخر and Guj. term. e), at last, finally.

Akh-o, .ī, -uň, adj., the whole, all. Alamgīr, m. (Pers. عالم كير), pr. n. and title of Aurangzeb. ('Alamgīr = 'World-seizer.')

Alā uddīn, m. (Ar. علا الدّين), pr. n. of a man, 'Alā u'ddīn.

Alaukik, adj., extraordinary, novel, unusual.

Alī, m. (Ar. علي), pr. n., 'Alī.

Al Kadr (Ar. اتحد, name of the

night (called in full رُيْلَةُ التَّدُر, i.e. 'night of power or of fate'), ou which the Qurân began to be revealed.

Alptagin, m., pr. n. of a chief (Turkish).

Al-siddīk, m. (Ar. الصّديق, the truthful), pr. n. of an Arab.

Al-zobair, m. (Ar. الزُّبَير), pr. n. of an Arab, Az-Zubair.

Ame, p. pron., we (v. gr.).

Amaldār, m. (Pers. عملدار), officer, official, governor.

Amarkot, n., pr. n. of a town.

Amburgadh, n., pr. n. of a town and fort.

Amīnā, f., (Ar. هُوَا), Āmina, pr. n. of Muḥammad's mother.

or Muḥammad's mother.
Amīr, m. (Ar. أمير), a nobleman.

Amo, p. pron., we (v. gr.).

Anākānī, f., reluctance, hesitation; ā. karvī, to hesitate.

Anangapāļ, m., pr. n. of a son of Jaipāl.

Anāvavuň, v. tr., to cause to bring; viŝvās an., to cause to believe, cause to accept.

Andar, postp. (Pers. اندر), within, inside.

Andhl-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., blind.

Ane, conj., and.

Angikār, n., acceptation; a. karvuñ, to accept.

Angļī, f., a finger, a toe.

Angrej, m. (Urdū انگريز), an Englishman.

Angrejī, adj., English.

Anjānpaņuñ, n., ignorance, want of intention.

Ankh, f., an eye.

Antahkaran, n., the heart, conscience.

Anubhav, m., experience.

Anvnn, v. tr., to bring.

Apamān, n., dishonour, insult.

Apann-o, -ī, -uñ, adj. pron., our, ours (incl., v. gr.).

Apasagan m., an ill omen.

Apavās, m., a fast, fasting.

Apāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to give (fr. āpvuñ).

Apāvuñ, v. (pass. of āpvuñ), to be given.

Apne, p. pron., we (incl., v. gr.).

App.-o, -ī, -uñ, pron. adj., our, ours (incl., v. gr.).

Apvuñ, v. tr., to give: (with oblique infin. of preceding verb), to permit.

Arab, m. (Ar. عرب), an Arab; Arab lok, Arabs.

Arabastān, n. (Pers. عربستان),

Arabī, adj., Arabian, Arabic.

Araj, f. (Ar. عرض), a request, representation.

Arākān, m., pr. n. of a province. Arambh, m., beginning.

Arop, m., accusation, charge.

Aropi, m., accused, defendant criminal.

Asal مراصل Asal مراصل Asal مراصل معالم معالم معالم المعالم معالم المعالم المع

Asal-n-o, -ī, -uñ) original, old, ancient.

Asare, adv., about, nearly

Ascharya, n., surprise, marvel; adj., wonderful, strange.

Asof Khāñ, m., pr. n. of a brother of Nür Jahān.

Aspās, postp., near, close to, at hand.

Asuddh, adj., impure, unclean.

Ataś, m. (Pers. أتش), fire.

Atasbeherām, m., a fire-temple.

Ath, num. adj., eight.

Athm-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., eighth.

Athvā, conj., or.

Ati, adv., very, extremely.

Atīk, m. (Ar. عيق, liberated slave), pr. n.

Atkāv, m. f., obstruction, hindrance.

Aṭkāvavuñ, v. tr., to prevent, hinder; refuse.

Atmā, m., a spirit, soul.

Atre, adv., here, hither.

Anrangjeb, m. (Pers. اورنگزیب), pr. n., Aurangzeb.

Avāj, m. (Pers. Urdū أواز, f.) voice, sound.

Avakār, m., a courteous reception.

Avasar, m., opportunity, occasion; period.

Avasthā, f., state, condition.

Avavuñ, v. intr., to come.

Aviśvāsī, adj., unbelieving; subs. m., unbeliever.

Avjāv, m., coming and going, traffic.

Av-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., like this, such, so.

Ayarküt, m., pr. n. of a man.

Ayaz, m., pr. n. of a man.

Ayodhyā, m., Province of Oude.

B and Bh (अ and ल).

Bachāv, m., preservation, deliverance.

Bachpanun, n., childhood.

Bachvuñ, v. intr., to escape.

Bād, adv. and postp. (Ar.), after, afterwards.

Badh-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., all.

Băhādūr, adj., brave, gallant; m., a hero (Pers. بهادر).

Bằhādurī, f., bravery, courage (Pers. بهادري).

Bahānuñ, n., excuse, pretext.

Bahar, m., district of Běhar.

Băhâr adv., out, outside; b. pad-

Baher) vuñ, to issue, happen, result, turn out.

Bahu, adj., many, much.

Bahvuñ, v. intr., to flow, pour.

Bāidī, f., a lady, a woman, a wife.

Bajār, n. (Pers. بازار), street, market, bāzār.

Bājū, f. (Pers. بازو), side; adv., to one side, aside; b. thavuñ, to go aside, get out of the way.

Bakhedo, m., tumult, quarrel, contention.

Bākī, f., the remainder (Ar. باقي); adj., remaining.

Bal, n., power, strength, might.

Bāļak, n., a child, a boy.

Baluchistān, n., Balūchistān (Beloochistan).

Balvuñ, v. intr., to be on fire, to burn, be burnt.

Bāļvuñ, v. tr., to set on fire, burn; intens., b. nāñkhvuñ.

Banāras, n., city of Benares.

Banāv, m., event, accident; accord.

Banāvat, f., an invention.

Banāvavuñ, v. tr., to do, make.

Band, n., rebellion, insurrection;
b. uţhāvavun, to stir up rebellion.

Bandhāvuñ, v. (pass. of Bāndhvuñ, q. v.), to be bound, to be built; Bandhāī gaelā lohīthī, from clotted blood.

Bandhe, adj., both.

Bāndhvuñ, v. tr., to tie, bind; to build, to set up.

Bandīkhānuñ, n. (bandī + Pers. غانه), prison.

Bandīvan, m., a prisoner.

Bangāļā, m., Province of Bengal. Banne, adj., both (also Bandhe). Banvuñ, v. intr., to come to pass, to happen, take place; to be made, to be done.

Bāp, m., father.

Bār, num. adj., twelve.

Barābar, adj. (Pers برابر). right, exact, equal, adequate.

Bārm-o, -ī, -uñ, num. adj., twelfth. Barobar, adj. (v. barābar), equal.

Basro, pr. n. (Ar. بَصُرِة), the city of Basra.

Batāvavuñ, v. tr., to explain, state, show.

Bāydī, f. (vide Bāidī), a woman, wife.

Be, adj. num., two; be be, two each, two by two.

Bedarkārī, f. (Pers. نى دركاري), in-difference, carelessness.

Bedī, f., a fetter, manacle.

Bednor, n., pr. n. of a place.

Begam, f. (Pers. (), woman's title, wife of a beg, princess.

Beher-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., deaf.

Berām, m. (Pers. إيرام), pr. n. of last king of Ghaznī.

Besādvuñ, v. tr., to cause to sit, seat, set.

Besvun, v. intr., to sit down (v. irreg. vv.).

Beți, f., a daughter.

Bevakuf, adj. (Pers. بى وتوك), senseless, silly.

Bhāduñ, n., hire, fare, rent.

Bhāg, m., part, portion, division, share.

Bhāgī, f., a girl's proper name.

Bhagvāndās, m., pr. n. of a king of Jaipur.

Bhāgvuñ, v. tr., to break, shatter; intens., bhāgī nāñkhvuñ.

Bhāī, m., brother, cousin.

Bhakti, f., prayer, adoration, worship.

Bhandol, m., capital, stock, fund. Bhangvuñ, v. tr., to break, shatter.

Bhaṇī, postp., towards, -ward.

Bhanjghad f., intricacy, discus-Bhanjgad sion, altercation,

Bhanvuñ, v. tr., to learn.

Bharavatīo, m., a beam of wood. Bhāre, adj., heavy.

Bhārmal, m., pr. n. of a King of Jaipur.

Bharoso, m., hope, confidence; tene...b. betho, he had confidence.

Bhartar } m., a husband.

Bharvuñ, v. tr., to fill.

Bhāśā, f., speech, language.

Bhāśān n., a speech, an ad-Bhāshan dress.

Bhāṭiā, n., pr. n. of a town.

Bhatrijo, m., a brother's son, nephew.

Bhay, m., fear, dread; danger. Bhet, f., an interview. Bhetvuñ, v. tr., to meet, to embrace.

Bhevād, n., pr. n. of a city.

Bhīkārī, m., a beggar.

Bhīkh, f., beggary, begging; b. māgvī, to beg.

Bhīmdev, m., pr. n. of a Hindū.

Bhīmī, f., pr. n. of a woman.

Bhomiyo, m, a guide.

Bhul, f., a blunder.

Bhulchuk, f., error and omission.

Bhut, m., an evil spirit, goblin, ghost.

Bī, conj. (Urdā 🚓), also, too.

Bījāpur, n., pr. n. of a town.

Bijo, -ī, -uū, num. adj., second, other.

Bilkul adv. (Ar. بَا كُمّ , alto-Bilkull gether.

Binā, f., circumstance, event.

Bokhārā, m., the district of Bukhārā (Pers. إنخارا).

Bol, m., a word.

Bolāvavnñ, v. tr., to call, summon. Bolvnñ, v. tr. and intr., to speak, to say.

Brāhmaņ, m., a Brāhmaņ.

Bam, f. (Pers. July, often pronounced bûng), a noise, shont, cry; b. mārvī or b. pāḍvī, to cry out, shout.

Ch and chh (2 and 8). Chadhāī, f., an ascent, assault, incursion. Chadhvuñ, v. intr., to ascend, mount up; intens., javuñ, āvavuñ.

Chākar, m., a servant (Pers. چاڪر).

Chākarī, f. (Pers. چاڪري), service, position.

Chāl, f., gait; conduct, walk.

Chālākī, f., cleverness, cunning (Pers. چالاکی).

Chalāvavuũ, v. tr., to cause to go, send off, fire (a gun), set going, circulate.

Chālī, f., a number of houses (small) in one block (chawl).

Chāļīs, num. adj., forty.

Chalkāt, m., brightness, brilliancy.

Chālu, adj., in motion, moving; current.

Chālvuñ, v. intr., to go, walk; to keep on, to last; to be current; chālto mahino, the present month.

Chamatkar, m., a miracle, a wonder. Chamund, n., pr. n. of a city.

Chāndbībī, f., pr. n. of a queen of Ahmadnagar.

Chandr, m., the moon.

Changam, n., name of a place.

Charitra, n., narrative, memoir.

Chaud, num. adj., fourteen.

Chelo, m., a disciple, follower.

Cherkulī, n., pr. n. of a place. Chetavanī, f., a caution, a warn-

Chetavaṇī, f., a caution, a warning.

Chhān-o, -ī, -uñ, secret, private.

Chhață, f., style (of speaking).

Chhaṭādār, m., one possessed of style.

Chhathth-o, -i, -uñ, adj., sixth.

Chhe, v., is, are (3rd sing. and pl. and 2nd sing. of \sqrt{chha} , q. v. gr.).

Chhedo, m., limit, boundary, end.

Chhek, adv., at length, quite.

Chhell-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., the last.

Chhinavavuñ, v. tr., to snatch away (intens. chh. levuñ).

Chhodavavuñ, v. tr., to deliver, rescue.

Chhodvuñ, to leave, abandon, cease; chhodi devuñ, intensative.

Chhokr-o, m., -ī, -uñ, a boy (girl, child), son (daughter).

Chhun, v. (1st sing. of √chha, v. gr.), am.

Chhuṭ-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., free; chh. mukvuñ or karvuñ, to set free.

Chhuṭvuñ, v. intr., to get free, be delivered, escape.

Chichārī) f., a scream, yell; c. Chichīārī) pādvī, to scream.

Chīrvuñ, v. tr., to tear, rip; chīrī nāŭkhvuñ, to rip up, intens.

Chitod, n., pr. n., Chitore (town). Chittakarshak, adi., heart-attract-

Chittākarshak, adj., heart-attracting.

Chohān, m., name of a family of Rajpūt kings of Ajmere.

Chokas, adj., precise, exact.

Chokasāī, f., caution, care, carefulness; exactness, precision.
Choth-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., fourth.

D soft and dh (& and 4).

Dādo, m., a paternal grandfather. Dago, m. (Ar. دغ), deceit, treachery, perfidy.

Dahādo m., a day.

Dāhīr, m., pr. n., Dāhīr.

Dākhal, adj., entering (Ar. اخل); dākhal thavuñ, to enter; d. karvuñ, to canse to enter.

Dakhan, f., the south, the Deccan. Dakshin, f., the south; the Deccan: adj., southern.

Damāskas, n., pr. n., the city of Damascus.

Dāniyāl, m., Daniel, pr. n. of 3rd son of Emperor Akbar.

Dant, m., tooth.

Dārā, m., pr. n. of one of Aurangzeb's brothers.

Darbar, f., a levee, audience, (at court).

Darek, adj. (Pers. دريك), each, every.

Dariā, f., the sea.

Dariāī, adj., marine.

Dārūdīo, m., a drunkard.

Darust, adj. (Pers دُرُست), correct,

Darvājo, m. (Pers. عرواره), a door, a gate; a doorway.

Das ten; das kalāke, at ten Das o'clock.

Dās, m., a slave, a servant.

Dasm-o, -ī, uñ, tenth.

Dattak, m., an adopted son.

Dātvuñ, to bury.

Dayā, f., mercy, pity.

Dayāļu, adj., merciful.

Dekhādvuñ, v. tr., to cause to see, to show.

Dekhāituñ, adj. n., apparent, visible.

Dekhāv, m., appearance, sight, a vision.

Dekhvuñ, v. tr., irregular (v. gr.), to see, perceive.

Deherun n., a temple, pagoda.

Deś, m., country, land.

Dev, m., a deity, a god.

Devalnagar, n., pr. n., old name of Karāchī.

Devavāṇī, f., a divine voice, a (heathen) oracle.

Dhaṇī, m., master, owner.

Dhāraṇ, n., market price; holding; taking up: d. karvuñ, to adopt (a title), assume.

Dharm, m., religion.

Dharmguru, m., religious teacher, priest.

Dhāro, m., law, rule; custom, manners: dhāro padyo, the law (custom) was established.

Dhārvun, v. tr., to set, fix; to think. consider.

Dhartī, f., the earth.

Dhartikanp, m., an earthquake.

Dhikkār, m., disdain, scorn; hatred.

Dhīre, adj., slowly.

Dhob(h)ī Talāv, name of a part of Bombay, Dhobī Talāo.

Dhyān, n., attention; d. āpruñ (— upar), to pay attention to.

Dīdh-o, ·ī, -uñ (part. of Devuñ), v. gr., irregular verbs.

Dikro, n., a son.

Dīkrī, f., a daughter.

Dilhī, n., the city Delhi.

Din, m., a day.

Diśā, f., state, condition.

Dīth-o, -ī, -uñ, v. (part. of Dekhvuñ, q. v.), seen.

Dīvān-o, -ī, -uñ, adj. (Pers. ديواني), mad; dīvāno, subs. m., a madman.

Divas, m., a day.

Dodvuñ, v. intr., to run.

Dolat, f., wealth (Ar. دُولة).

Dravya, n., wealth, property.

Duhkh (5:4), n., pain, suffering, distress.

Duniyā

Duniyā

Duniyā

Duniā

Dür, adj., distant, far.

Duśman, m., enemy (Pers. دُشْمَى).

Dūt, m., a messenger, an angel.

Duvāī, f., prayer, blessing (Ar.

Lo); d. feravavuñ, to have
prayers offered for himself in
the mosques, as sign of his
being emperor.

D hard and dh (5 and 6).

Dāb-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., left (side, hand).

Dhaglo, m., a large heap, accumulation.

Dhab f., style, air, method; Dhap idiom.

Dhongī, m., religious pretender, hypocrite.

Dolo, m., eye; sight.

E (એ).

E, demonst. adj., that.

e, postp. (see gr.), in, at, by (agent.).

-e, affix, sometimes adds emphasis, as eke, 'even one;' 'just one:' trane, 'all three,' &c.

Ebn Hāreth, m., pr. n. (Ar. اثن خارف), Ibn Ḥārith, surname of Zaid, q. v.

Ek, num. adj., one; a.

Ekānt, f., a private place, privacy: ekāntno (nī, nuũ), private.

Ekāntī, adj., belonging to privacy, private.

Ekdam, adv. (ek + Pers. دم), at once, instantly.

Ekmek, adj., mixed, mutual; one another.

Ekth-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., together, collected; — karvuñ, to collect.

Elchī, m. (Turk. اللَّهِي), an ambassador.

Em, adv., thus, so, in this way.

Etle, particle, then, that is to say.

Etlo, -ī, -uñ, adj., so much, thus much: etlāmān, meanwhile: etle, then; that is to say, viz.

Ev-o, ī, -nũ, adj. pr., such as this; thus.

F (& or Y).

Fakat, adv., only, simply (Ar.

Fariād f., complaint, supplica-Fariyād tion, (Pers. 36).

Farithi, adv., again, once more.

Farvuñ, v. intr., to turn, to move about, to travel, perambulate.

Fateh, f. (Ar. i), victory.

Fāvavuñ, v. intr., to succeed; to find convenient.

Felävavuñ, v. tr., to spread, cause to spread, cause to extend.

Feravavuñ, v. tr., to cause to turn, to turn; to circulate, to run a trap (for hire).

Firdosī, m., pr. n. of the great

Persian Poet (author of Shāhnāmeh).

Foj, f., army (Ar. ¿); Polis foj, police force.

G and gh (N and U).

Gabhrāvuñ, v. intr., to be confused.

Gādī, f., a throne.

Gāḍī, f., a carriage (of any sort).

Gaznavī adj., Ghaznavite.

Gakhkar, m., name of a mountain tribe in the north of the Panjäb.

Gali, f., a lane.

Gām, n., a village.

Gāmḍuñ, n., a small village, hamlet.

Game, conj., even if, although.

Gaṇāvuñ, v. (pass. of gaṇvuñ, q.v.), to be accounted.

Ganān, n. (corr. fr. jnān), knowledge.

Ganvun, v. tr., to count, reckon.

Garhasth, m. (v. grihasth), a gentleman.

Garīb, adj. (Ar. غُرِيب), poor, humble.

Garvisht, adj., proud, haughty.

Gayo, gaī, gayuñ, v. (past of javuñ, irreg.), v. gr.

Gera-upayog, m. (Hybrid, Ar. غير + up.), uselessness.

Gervājabī, adj. (Ar. غُير + واجبي), improper.

Ghaṇīkvār, adv., pretty often, several times.

Ghan-o, -ī, -uñ, much, many.

Ghan-o khar-o, adj., very many.

Ghanto, m., a belt.

Ghar, n., a house; household.

Ghard-o, -ī, -nñ, adj., old, aged, advanced in years.

Gharḍāvarḍāo, m. pl., ancestors, forefathers.

Ghusvuñ, v. intr., to push one's way in.

Gher (for ghare), in, to a house; home, at home.

Ghodāvāļo, m., a horsekeeper, groom, driver.

Ghodo, m., a horse: ghode, on a horse.

Ghor, m. (Pers غور wild ass), appellation of Bahrām, king of Ghaznī.

Ghorī, adj., belonging to, descendant from Bahrām Ghor.

Ghuṭaṇ, m. a knee: ghuṭṇēe paḍ-Ghuṭṇ̄, f. vuñ, to fall on one's knees, to kneel down.

Gijhnī, the city of (غُزْني) Ghaznī. Govaļkonṭā, n., name of a fortress in the Deccan.

Gufā, f., a cave.

Grihasth, m., a gentleman.

Gujarāt, n., name of a city and province.

Gujārvuñ, v. tr., to cause to pass, to cause to come upon.

Gulām, m. (Ar. عُلَام), a male slave. Gulāmḍī, f., dim., a female slave. Guņ, m., qualities, attributes, virtues.

Gusse, adj. (Hind. غُفُ from Ar. غُفُ), angry.

Gvaliyar, n., the city of Gwalior.

H (5).

Habsī adj., negro (Ar. حبشي). Habsī Adj., negro (Ar. حبشي). Haidrābād, n., city of Ḥaidarābād. Hājar, adj. (Ar. حاضر), present,

in attendance.

Hajār, num., a thousand (P. هزار).
Hajrat, m. (Ar. عُمْرَةُ), word used
to show respect among Muhammadans, as S'ri among Hindūs,
His Highness, Saint.

Hākem, m. (Ar. حاجم), ruler, governor.

Hāl, adv. (Ar. حال, state), at present, now.

Hālat, f., state, condition (Ar. "").

Halve, adv. (often doubled), gently, gradually, slowly.

Hame, pron., we, v. gr. (ame is the better form in Guj.).

Hamṇāñ, adv., now, at present.

Hānī f., loss, injury, damage.

Hāñkvuñ, v. tr., to drive, urge; H. kādhvuñ, expel. Hāñsal (corr. from Ar. حاصل) karvuñ, v. tr., to gain, acquire, attain to.

Hār, f., a defeat; h. khāvī, to be defeated.

Harakat, f. (Ar. حَرَّفَة), hindrance, difficulty.

Harakh, m., joy, rapture.

Harāvavuñ, v. tr., to defeat.

Harīf, m. (Ar. حريف), rival.

Hārvuñ, v. intr., to be defeated.

Hase, v., 3rd sing. fut. of hovun, to be, v. gr.

Hāśim m., proper name of an Hāśem Arab, Hāshim.

Hasvuñ, v. intr., to laugh.

Hāth, m., hand; authority.

Hath, f., obstinacy.

Hat-o, -ī, -uñ, v. intr., was (from hovuñ, q. v.).

Hāthī, m., an elephant.

Have, adv., now, at this time.

Hemu, m., pr. n. of a wazīr.

Himat, f. (Ar. (Ar. (Ar. boldness; courage. Himat bharelo vichār, a bold thought.

Hindu, m., a Hindū.

Hindustān, n., pr. n., India, Upper India.

Hīrā, pr. n. (Ar. حراء) of a cave near Mecca.

Hisāb, m. (Ar. حساب), account, reckoning.

Hokins, m., Captain Hawkins.

Holvavnn, v. tr., to extinguish, put out.

Holvāvnň, v. pass., to be extinguished: h. javuň (intens.).

Hot (see hovun and gr. s.v.).

Hot-o, -ī, uñ, v. intr., was (form of hato sometimes used after neg. na, v. gr.).

Hovuñ, v. intr. aux., to be, to become, v. gr.

Humāyuñ, m., pr. n. of an emperor, father of Akbar.

Hukumat, f. (Ar. حكومه), rule.

Hukm, m. (Ar.), command, order.

Humlo, m. (Ar. ملم), an attack, assault.

Hnű, pers. pr., I (v. gr.).

Hunnar, m. (Pers. هُنُر), au art, skill.

I, and I (y and y).

Ichchhā, f., a wish, desire.

Ijā, f., injury, trouble (Ar. ايدا).

Ijan, n. (Ar. الأوا), an invitation.

Imān, n. (Ar. علم), faith, helief.

Imārat, f. (Ar. علم), a building.

Inglānd, n., pr. n., England.

Insāfī, adj. (from Ar. الماء), just.

Irān, m., pr. n., Irān, Persia.

Irānī, adj., Persian.

Isā, m., pr. n., Jesns (Ar.

Isavī, adj. (عيسوى), Christian : Īsavī

san (or §. A.), Christian Year, = A.D.

Iśu, m., pr. n., Jesus (Ar. يُسُوع). Iśvar, m., God.

Isvarī, adj., divine.

J and Jh (of and 分).

J, affix, adding emphasis, equivalent to indeed or to italicisation.

Jabrīyel, m., pr. n. (Ar. جُبِرُيُل), the angel Gabriel.

Jabr-o, -i, -uñ, adj. (Ar. جُبُر), mighty, powerful, great.

Jādu, n., sorcery, witchcraft, magic.

Jādūgar, m., sorcerer, magician (Pers. جادوگر).

Jaga Jago Jagyā f., (Old Pers. poet الكِبَة,), a place.

Jahānkhāñ, m., pr. n. of a man.

Jahāñsūz, m. (Pers. جهانسوز), appellation of 'Alā 'uddīn Ghorī.

Jajīāvero, m. (Ar. جَزِية + Guj. vero, a tax), the Jazia-tax.

Jalāluddīn, m., pr. n. of Akbar (Ar. جلال الدين).

Jamābandī, f., revenue, landassessment.

Jamāi, m., son-in-law.

Jamin, f. (Pers. زمين), land, ground.

Jāmin, m. (Ar. فاس), a baillor, guaranteer, one who gives bail or security for. Jamnā, f., name of river, Jamnā.
Jamņ-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., right (of the hand).

Jān, m. (Pers. جان), life; j. levo, to slay.

Jan, m. and n., person.

Jāñhāñgīr, m. (Pers. جهاکلیر), name of Salīm, eldest son of Akbar, Emperor Jehāngīr.

Janam n., birth; janm dharvuñ, Janm being born.

Janm charitra, n., biography.

Janmvuñ, v. intr., to be born.

Janānkhānuñ, n. (Pers. زناندخاند), seraglio, zenana.

Jaṇāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to know, state, inform.

Jaṇāvuñ, v. (pass. of jāṇvuñ, q.v.), to be known.

Jāņvuñ, v. tr., to know.

Jarā, adj. and adv. (Ar. اَذْرَة), a little, some, (with neg.), at all.

Jārī, adj. (Ar. جاري), flowing, current; jārī rākhvuñ, to support (a custom, &c.).

Jasvantsinh, m., pr. n. of a general and king of Jodhpur.
Jāt, f., a tribe; caste; kind, sort.
Jātī, f., gender; adj., natural.

Javāb, m., an answer, reply (Ar.

Javāhir) n. (corr. of Ar. pl. Javāhir), a jewel. Javānī, f., youth.

Javuñ, v. intr., irreg. (v. gr.), to go.

Jayā (gerund. from javuñ, v. gr. irreg. verbs), jayā karto, used to go.

Jaychand, m., Prince of Kanoj.

Jaypāļ, m., pr. n., Jaipāl, name of two kings of Lahore.

Jazīrat-ul-Arab(Ar. ﴿جَزِيْرَةُ ٱلْعَرِبُ, the Arabian Peninsula.

Je, rel. pr., who, which, that; je kaiñ, whatever, whatsoever.

Jems, m., pr. n., James (I. of England).

Jepur, n., town of Jaipur (Jeypore).

Jev-o, -ī, uñ, adj., such.

Jhād, n., a tree, a plant.

Jhājh-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., much, very, more.

Jherī, adj. (Urdū زَمْرِي), poisonous.

Jhurabandh, adj., mortifying, sorrowful, sad.

Jindagī, f. (corr. from Pers. زِنْدَكِي), life, period of life.

Jīt, f., a victory.

Jītnār, m., conqueror, victor.

Jītvuñ, v. tr., to overcome, conquer; jītī levuñ, to capture (a city).

Jīvavuñ, v. intr., to live, remain alive.

Jnān, n., knowledge.

Jo, conj., if; jo ke, although.

Jode, postp., with.

Jodhpur, n., town of Jodhpore.

Joie, v. defect. (v. gr.), it is necessary, must.

Jor, n. (Pers. زور), strength, power, violence.

Jovañ, v. tr. (v. gr.), to see, behold.

Jubānī (Pers. زُبَان), oral evidence, speech, word of mouth.

Jud-o, -ī, -uñ, adj. (Pers. أُجُداً), separate, different.

Julam, m. (Ar. ظلم), tyranny, cruelty.

Jun-o, -ī, -uñ, adj, old, ancient.

Justī f., yoke, sway.

Juțhāpaṇuñ and Juțhāṇuñ, n., a lie, a fabrication.

Juth-o, -ī, -uñ, false.

Jūthuñ, n., a lie.

Jyāñ, adv., where.

Jyare, adv., when.

K and Kh (5 and W).

Kābul, n., pr. n. of a city of Afgbānistān.

Kabūl, adj. (Ar. قبول), accepted; k. karvuñ, to accept, receive; agree (to do).

Kachadvuñ, v. tr., to crush, to tread down, trample, run over; k. nāŭkhvuñ, intens.

Kachdāvuñ, v. (pass. of kachadvuñ), to be crushed.

Kāḍhvuñ, v. tr., to take out, drive out, extract, draw out; kādhī mukvuñ, to drive out, intens.; vakht kāḍhvuñ, to spend time.

Kadī, adv. (with neg.), never; kadī kadī, sometimes, at times.

Kādījā, f. (Ar. خُدِنجَة), pr. n., Khadīja, Muḥammad's first wife.

Kadko, m., a piece, bit, fragment. Kāfalo, m. (Ar. قافلاً), a caravan; dariyāno k., a fleet.

Kāfar, m. (Ar. کفر), an unbeliever. Kāgaļ, m., paper, a letter (Pers. كَفُلا).

Kāhādvuñ, v.tr. totake out (= kādhvuñ, q. v.).

Kāhāṇī, f., a story, fable, tale.

Kāiñ) n. pron. (v. gr.), some, some-Kaiñ) thing, any.

Kajio, m. (Ar. تَفْيَدُ), a quarrel, a lawsuit.

Kajvā, n., pr. n. of a town about thirty miles from Allahābād.

Kakdo, m., a piece, bit.

Kāko, m., a paternal uncle.

Kāļ, m., time, period; teno kāļ thayo, his time was np, he died.

Kalāk, f. (Eng. clock), an hour; das kalāke, at ten o'clock.

Kalam, f. (Ar. وَأَلَمَ a reed-pen, a pen.

Kālikat, m., town of Calicut.

Kalinjar, n., city of Kalinjar.

Kalpanā, f., fancy, imagination. Kām, n., work, deed.

Kāmbaksh, m. (Pers. لأخيش), pr. n. Kāmbakhsh, a son of Aurangzeb.

Kampanī, f., the (East India) Company (Eng.).

Kān, adv., why, wherefore?

Kan, n., the ear.

Kandahār, n., city of Candahār.

Kanoj, n., Kanoj (Canodge). Kanyā, f., a maiden, a princess.

Kanyā Kumāri, n., pr. n., Cape Comorin.

Kāpad, n., cloth.

Kāpvuñ, v. tr., to cut; intens., kāpī nāñkhvuñ, to cut off, cut down.

Kar, m., tax; usage.

Kāraņ, n., cause, reason; kāraņ ke, because.

Karāñchī, n., city of Karāchī (Kurrachee).

Karāvuñ, v. (pass. of karvuñ), to be done.

Kārbhārī, m., manager, officer.

Karine, v. (connective part. of karvuñ); postp., on account of; by means of, v. gr.

Karnal, m., (Eng.) colonel.

Karnal Smith, Col. Smith.

Karnal Belī, Col. Bailey.

Karnātak, m., the Carnatic.

Karod, num. adj., a crore, ten millions.

Kartāň postp. (orig. part. of kar-Karttāň vuñ), than (used in comparison).

Karvuñ, v. irreg. tr. (v. gr.), to do, to make.

Kāśī, n., the city of Banāras (Benares).

Kaśi, adj. pron. (Pārsī Gnj., from Urdū كسى any.

Kāsim, m., (Ar. قاسم), pr. n., Qāsim, of a man.

Kaśmīr, m., the country of Kashmīr (Cashmere).

Kathā, f., a tale, story, narrative. Katko, m., a piece, bit, portion.

Katto, i, -un, adj., bitter, fierce, mortal (enemy).

Kavī, m., a poet.

Ke, conj., that; or.

Ked, m., (Ar. قيد), imprisonment; k. karruñ, to imprison.

Kehen, f. and m., a message.

Kehenäro, m., a relator, narrato<mark>r.</mark> Kehevävuñ, v. (pass. of *kehevuñ*),

to be called; to be said, to be told.

Kehevuñ, v. tr. irreg. (v. gr.), to say, speak.

Kem, adv., how? in what way?

Keptan, m., (Eng.) Captain.

Kethe, adv., anywhere; whence?
Ketl-o, -ī, -uū, adj., how much?
how many? ketlāek or ketlāk,
m., a good many, some considerable number (or length) of.

Kev-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., what sort of? Khabar, f., news, information, tidings.

Khabardār, adj. (Pers. خبردار), careful, on one's guard.

Khabardārī, f. (Pers. خبرداري), care, carefulness.

Khachīt, adv., sure, certain; adv., certainly.

Khadījā, f. (vide Kādijā).

Khalī, adj. (Ar. خالی), empty.

Khalifo, m. (Ar, غَلِيْفَ), a Khalif (Caliph).

Khālsā, m, state land, government land; -k. $karvu\tilde{n}$, to confiscate to the state.

Khamvuñ, v. tr., to suffer, endure.

Khāñ, m. (Pers. خان), master, lord. Khanagī, adj. (from Pers. خانه), private.

Khandanī, f., tribute, fine.

Khānzamān, m. (Pers. خان زمان), pr. n. of a Muhammadan chief.

Kharāb, adj. (Ar. غراب), bad, evil; adv., ill.

Kharekharuñ, adv., truly, assuredly.

Kharekhāt, adv., assuredly.

Khar-o, -ī, -un, adj., true real, good.

Khatāb, m. (Ar. خطاب), title, appellation.

Khātuñ, n., account, department, province.

Khavāduñ, v. tr., to cause to eat; hār kh., to inflict a defeat.

Khāvun, v. tr. irreg. (v. gr.), to eat; to suffer.

Khenchāvun, v. (pass, of khenchvun), to be pulled, dragged, etc.

Khenchvuñ, v. tr., to pluck, pull, drag; khenchi kāḍhvuñ, v. intens., to pluck out.

Khorāk, f. (Pers. خُرُراك), food.

Khorāsān, m., the country of Khurāsān.

Khoṭ-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., false, untrue. Khovuñ, v. tr., to lose, destroy.

Khubsūrat, adj. (Pers. خوصورت), beautiful.

Khubsūratī, f. (Pers. خوبصورتي), beauty.

Khull-o, -ī, -un, adj., open, free, plain, clear.

Khun, n. (Pers. خۇن), murder; koīnuñ k. karvuñ, to murder any one.

Khuno, m., a corner, angle.

Khuś, adj. (Pers. خوش), pleased.

Khuśī, f. (Pers. خوشی), pleasure.

Khusrū, m. (Pers. خوسرو), Khusrau, pr. n. of a son of Bahrām.

Khusrū Malek, m. (Pers. خوسروملا), Khusrau Malik, grandson of Bahrām.

Kīdh-o, -ī, -uñ, a part of Karvuñ (v. gr. irr. vv.).

Killo, m. (Ar. قُلُعًا), fort castle, fortified town.

Kīmatī, adj. (Pers. زَيْمَتي), valuable. Kināro, m. (Pers. کِنَارِه), shore, coast.

Kitāb, f. (Ar. كاب), a book.

Koi, p. pron., some one, any one. Kon, interr. pron. (v. gr.), who?

Kon, m., a corner, angle.

Koreś م. (Ar. قرَنُونَ), the Arabian Koresh) tribe of the Quraish, to which Muḥammad belonged.

Kūch, f. (Pers. 5), a march; k. karvī, to march.

Kul, n, a family, tribe, race.

Kumārpāļ, m. pr. n. of a king of Gujarāt.

Kuñvar, m., a prince, a youth.

Kuñvar Rāy, m., pr. n. of a king of Kanoj.

Kurān, n. (Ar. قُرَان), the Qur'ān (Coran).

Kuśal, adj., happy, healthy, safe; clever.

Kutubuddīn, m. (Ar. تَطْبُ الْدِينِ),
pr. n. of a man, Qutb'ddīn.

Kutumb, m., a family.

L (여).

Lābh, m., profit, gain, advantage. Ladvaiyo, m., a fighter, warrior, soldier.

Ladvuñ, v. intr., to fight, battle. Läek, adj. (Ar. لائق), worthy. Lagan, n. pl, marriage, wedding; l. karvāñ, to marry (— sāthe).

Lagbhag, adv., nearly, almost.

Lagī, postp., up to, until, till.

Lago, part. for Lāgyo, from Lāgvuñ, q. v.; also, imperat., 2nd pl. of do.

Lägvuñ, v. intr., to feel, to be produced (fruit), to begin, to attach to.

Lahor, n., the city of Lahore.

Laīne, v., conn. part of levuñ, q. v. (see gr.).

Lākh, adj. num., one hundred thousand.

Lakhāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to write, to dictate.

Lakhnāro, m., (from lakhvuñ, q. v.), a writer, author.

Lakhvuñ, v. tr., to write, compose. Lāmb-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., long.

Lānch, f., a bribe; l. khāvī, to take a bribe; l. khavādvī, to bribe.

Lās, f., corpse (Pers. لعش, Ar. لاش, Urdū, نغش,

Laśkar, n., army (Pers. انشكر).

Lāvavuñ, v. tr., to bring.

Lāyakī, f. (from Ar. لائق), worth, worthiness.

Levuñ, v. tr. irreg. (v. gr.), to take; laī javuñ, to take away, go off taking; laī ävavuñ, to bring.

Lidhe, postp., for the sake of, on account of.

Līdh-o, -ī, -uñ, v. (part. of levuñ), irr., v. gr.

Lohī, n., blood.

Lok, m. and n., people, a nation. Lüchchäī, f., knavery, dissolute

conduct.

Lüt, f., booty, plunder. Lütvuñ, v. tr., to plunder.

M (H)

Mā, f., mother.

Madad, f. (Ar. 5.2), help, aid, assistance; koīnī madad karvī, or koīne madad āpvī, to aid any one.

Mādhava Rāv, m., pr. n. of a man. Madīnā, n. (Ar. مُدِينَةً), the city of Medina.

Madrās, n., the city of Madras.
Māgvuñ, v. tr., to ask, beg; desire, wish.

Mahamad, n. (Ar. عَضَّرُ), Mnhammad; also used in Gujarātī for خُوْرُد, Maḥmūd of Ghaznī. (A common man's name among Muslims.)

Mahān, adj., great; large. Mahīno, m., a month.

Majlis, f. (Ar. مُجُلِّس), an assembly.

Makkā, n., (Ar. ﷺ), city of Mecca.

Makkāvāļo, m., an inhabitant of Mecca.

Māl, m. (Ar. JL), property, goods. Māldev, m., pr. n. of a maa.

Malik Ambar, m., pr. n. of a wazīr.

Mālmatā, f., Ar. (مَال متاع), property, possessions.

Maltīo, m., an associate, an ally.

Mālūm, adj. (Ar. مَعْنُوم), known;

m. padvuñ, to become known.

Malvuñ, v. intr., to meet, come to, be obtainable.

Mamāvo, m., maternal grandfather.

Man, n., heart, mind.

Mān, n., respect, regard, honour.
Mān, postp., in, into; mānthī, from among.

Manāro, m. (Ar. pl. منارة from منار), a minaret, tower, turret.

Māṇas, n. (occasionally m.), a person, human being, a man.

Manāvuñ, v. (pass. of mānvuñ, q. v.), to be honoured.

Mānd-o, -ī, -uñ, adj. (Pers. مانْده), sick.

Mandvāḍ, m., sickness (hybrid word, Pers. + Guj. term. + $v\bar{a}d$).

Māndvuñ, v. intr., to begin, commence.

Mane (from man, q. v.), in mind. Mane, pron. pers. (from hun, q. v.), me, to me.

Māngvun, v.tr. (= magvun q. v.), to ask, beg, desire.

Manhe, postp. and adv., within, among.

Māñhomañhe, adv., mutually, among themselves.

Manmant-o, ī, -uñ, adj., agreeable, congenial, enough.

Mānnāro, m., (from mānvuñ, q. v.), one who respects.

Mānpatar, n., an address of honour.

Māñs, n., meat, flesh.

Mansing, m., pr. n. of a prince.

Mān vuñ, v. tr., to honour, respect, observe; confess, acknowledge.

Mār, f., a beating; mār khāvī, f., to be beaten.

Maran, n., death; maran pāmvuñ, to die.

Maretho, n., Marāthā; adj. (-o, -ī, -uū), belonging to the Marāthās.

Marjī, f., (Ar. Pers. Urdū مُرَضَي), desire, will, pleasure.

Mār-o, -ī, -uñ, pron. poss., my, mino.

Marnar, m.f.n. (agent of marvuñ, q. v.), deceased.

Mārvād, m., the district of Mārvād (Mārvār).

Mārvuñ, v. tr., to strike, slay;

mārī nānkhvuñ, to kill; mārī

nankvuñ, to be struck dead,

killed; māryo javuñ, to be

killed.

Mās, m., a month.

Māsī, f., mother's sister, maternal aunt.

Māsīāī, adj., belonging to one's maternal aunt.

Mastan, adj., wild, excited, mad, ungovernable.

Masūd, m., pr. n. (Ar. مُسْعُود), Mas'ūd.

Mat, n., opinion, doctrine, dogma.

Mātā, f., mother.

Mate, postp., and conj., on account of, because of; e mate or mate, therefore.

Māṭh-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., bad, evil, wicked, wrong.

Māthuñ, n., head, top.

Mathurā, n., name of a city, Mathurā, on the Jamnā, eighty miles from Âgra.

Mutlab, m. (Ar. مُطْلُبُ), purpose, object, aim.

Mātr, adv., merely, only.

Medān, n. (Per. ميدان), a plain, field of battle.

Mehel, m. (Ar. عَدُّ), a palace (r. mohol).

Mehelvuñ (also melvuñ), to put, to keep, to leave.

Meherbānī, f. (Pers. رُبُرُياني), kindness, favour.

Mehesūl, f. (Ar. محمول), ax, revenue.

Melvavuñ, v. tr., to get, gain acquire: to mix.

Melvuñ, v. tr. (-mehelvuñ), to put, to leave, to keep.

Meñ, pron. pers. (agential of huñ, v. gr.), by me.

Mhaisūr, n, the town of Mysore. Mī. (contr. for Eng. Mister), Mr.

Mirjā Khān, m. (Pers. ميزا خان), pr. n. of a man, Mīrzā Khān.

Mirjumalā, m., pr. n. of a man.

Misar, m. (Ar. مفر), Egypt.

Mīṭhās, f., sweetness, eloquence.

Mitr, m., a friend.

Moājim, m. (Ar. معاظم), Mu'āzim, pr. n. of a son of Aurangzeb.

Mogal, m. (Pers. مُغُلُ), a Mughul (Mogul).

Moh, n., facination, charm.

Mohābat Khān, m. (Pers. المحبت خان), Muḥabbat <u>Kh</u>ān, pr. n. of a noble.

Mohol, m., a palace (Ar. گُذْ), = mehel.

Mokalāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to send.

Mokalelāpaņuñ, n., the character or office of one sent; apostleship.

Mokalelo (part. of mokalvuñ, q. v.), one sent, an apostle, messenger.

Mokalvuñ, v. tr., to send.

Mokrib Khāñ, m. (Per. مُقْرِب خان), Muqrib <u>Kh</u>āñ, pr. n. of a man.

Morād, m. (Ar. مراد), Murād, pr. n. of a son of Akbar.

Mot-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., great; large, big.

Mubārak Khān, m. (Pers. مُبارَك خان), pr. n. of an Afghān.

Muddat, f. (Ar. مُدَةً), period of time.

Muel-o, -ī, -uñ (part. of marvuñ. q. v.), dead.

Mug-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., dumb.

Mujab, postp. (Ar. موجب), according to.

Mukadamo, m. (Ar. مقدمة), business, lawsuit.

Mukāvuñ, v., (pass. of mukvuñ, q. v.), to be put.

Mukhī Mukhya adj., chief, principal.

Mukvnñ, v. tr., to part; to give up, let go, release (also used as aux. v., vide gr.).

Mūlak, n. (Ar. 🕮), a country.

Mulākāt, f. (Ar. الْمَاتَةُ), an interview, meeting.

Multān, n., pr. n. of a town in the Panjāb.

Multavī, adj. (Ar. مُلْتَوَى), delayed, adjourned.

Mumbaī, n., the city of Bombay.

Mumtājmahāl, f., pr. n. of a queen of Shāhjahān.

Mu-o, -ī, -uñ (part. of marvuñ, q. v.), dead.

Murād, m. (Ar. مراد), pr. n. of a brother of Aurangzeb.

Murtī, f., an image, idol, form.

Murtīpūjak, adj., idolatrous; m.,
an idol-worshipper.

Mūsā, m. (Ar. موسى, pr. n., Moses. Musalmān, m., a Muslim, Musalmān (Pers. مُسَلُّهَان, corr. from رُمُسُلُّمار, Pers. pl. of مُسَلَّمان).

Musalmānī, adj., Muḥammadan. Muskelī, f. (from Ar. شكل), difficulty.

N (9).

Na, adv., not.

Nā, adv., no; 2. noun. f., refusal; nā kahevī (pādvī), to refuse.

Nabl-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., weak, infirm, powerless.

Nadī, f., a river.

Nadvuñ, v. tr., to obstruct, hinder. Nagar, n., city.

Nagarkot, n., pr. n. of city, Nagarkot.

Nāhān-o, -ī, -uñ (better written nāno, &c.), little, small, young.
Nāhāsvuñ v. intr., to flee, escape;
Nāsvuñ n. javuñ (intens.).

Nahi Nahin adv., not, no (v. gr.).

Nairutya, adj., south-western.

Najdīk, postp., near, close (Pers.

Nām, n., a name; a noun; nāme, by name.

Nām-no, -ī, -nñ, famous.

Nāmdār, adj., famons, renowned.

Namuno, m., example, specimen. Nandrāj, pr. n. of a man.

Nā(ñ)khvuñ, v. tr., to throw, toss (used also as an aux. to strengthen meaning).

Nankhāvavun, v. tr., to cause to throw.

Nankhāvun, v. (pass. of nankhavun), to be thrown; mārī nankhāvun, to be killed.

Nāpāk, adj. (Per. اپاك), impure, unclean, defiled.

Narak, n., Hell (one of the Hindu hells originally).

Nārāyan Kevārī, m., a Hindū (man's) name.

Narmāś, f. (Pers. نُرُّم soft), softness, gentleness.

Nārol, n., pr. n. of village at the S. W. corner of Delhi.

Nāś, m., destruction; v. tr., nāś karvo, to destroy.

Nas, f., vein, artery.

Nathi, adv. (used for neg. of chhe, v. gr.), is not, are not.

Navāī, f., novelty, rarity.

Navamo, -ī, -uñ, num. adj., ninth.

Nav-o, -ī, uñ, adj., new.

Ne (contr. from ane), conj., and.

Ne, postp., to, for (sign of acc.).

Niche, adv. and postp., below, under, down.

Nikalvuñ, v. intr., to go out.

Nimvnñ, v. tr., to appoint, nominate.

Nipajvuñ, v. intr., to result, proceed from, spring up.

Niśāṇī, f. (Urdū نشان, Pers. نشان), sign, proof.

Nizām, m. (Ar. نظام), title of a ruler (of Ḥaidarābād, Deccan).

Nizāmśāh, m., pr. n. (son of Queen Chāndbībī).

No, m., nī; f., nuñ, n., postp. of (see gram.).

Nokarī, f., service (Pers. نُوكَرِي).

Nurjahāñ, f., pr. n. (Pers. نورجهای) of wife of Emp. Jahāngīr.

0 (ઓ).

O, interj., O.

Oddho, m., rank, position, station.
Odhe utarvuũ, v. intr., to descend
hereditarily.

Olakhvuñ, v.tr., to know, recognise.
Olkhāvuñ, v. (pass. of olkhavuñ,
to know), to be known, called.
Ordo, m., apartment, chamber,

Othmān, m., pr. n. (Ar. عثمان), 'Uthmān.

Otlo, m., a veranda, porch, platform.

P (4).

Pāchhaļ, postp., behind; pāchhaļthī, adv., afterwards.

Pachhī, postp., after; adv., after-wards.

Pāchho, -ī, -uň, adj., back; as te pāchho āvyo chhe, 'he has come back.'

Pāchhuñ, adr., again, back, backwards; pāchhuñ farvuñ, to turn back, to retreat.

Pachīs, num. adj., twenty-five.

Pad, n., dignity, rank.

Pādośī, m., a neighbour.

Pādśāh, m. (Pers. پادشاء), an emperor.

Pādśāhī, adj. (Pers. پادشاهي) royal, imperial.

Padvī, f., rank, dignity, office.

Padvuñ, v. intr., to fall; happen, occur; tene rehevuñ padyuñ, 'he had to remain.'

Pāḍvuñ, v. tr., to cause to fall, throw down, knock down; aux. adds intensity, as toḍī pāḍvuñ, to break in pieces; nā pāḍvī, to deny, refuse.

Pahād, n., a mountain.

Pahāḍī, adj., mountain, belonging to a mountain.

Paiso, m., a paisã ('pice,' 4 anna); money.

Pakadāvuñ, v. (pass. of pakadvuñ), to be caught.

Pakadvuñ, v. tr., to seize, grasp, hold.

Pāko, -ī, -uñ, } adj., perfect, Pakk-o, -ī, -uñ' complete; ripe.

Paksh, m., a wing; a side, party, koino paksh karvo, to esponse any one's part.

Paļāvuñ, v. (pass. of pāļvuñ) to be observed, kept.

Pāļvuñ, v. tr., to support; to keep, observe (a law).

Pāmvuñ, v. tr., to obtain, get, gain.

Pan, conj., but, also, moreover; topan, yet, nevertheless.

Panch, num. adj., five.

Pānchm-o, -ī, -nñ, adj., fifth.

Pāṇī, n., water.

Pāṇīpat, n., pr. n. of a town fifty miles north of Delhi.

Panjāb, m., the Panjāb.

Pāp, n., sin.

Pāpī, m., sinner.

Par, postp., upon, on.

Paramdahāḍe adv., on the day Paramdine before yesterday or the day after to-morrow.

Paranāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to marry, give in marriage.

Parantu, conj., but.

Paranvuñ, v. intr., to be married (sāthe).

Pardes, m., a foreign land.

Pardeškhatānno pardhān, m., Secretary for Foreign Affairs; — nāyab pardhān, Under-Secretary for Foreign Affairs.

Pardhān, m. (also pradhān), minister, councillor.

Pargat, adj. (also pragat), clear, manifest, evident.

Parinam, n., result, consequence.

Parjā, f. (also prajā), progeny; subjects.

Pārsī, m., a Pārsī; adj., Persian, Pārsī.

Parvīz, m. (Pers. پُرويز), pr. n. of a prince.

Pasand, adj. (Pers. (پَسَدُ), pleasing, acceptable; pasand padeuñ, 'to become pleasing,' 'to turn out acceptable.'

Pasār, f., walking, taking a walk; pasār thavun, to glide away, to pass.

Pase, postp., near; up to; adv., near, at hand.

Pathān, m., an Afghān.

Pathe, postp., like; adv., similarly, like.

Paththar, m., a stone.

Pāṭvīkuñvar, m., crown prince, heir apparent.

Pautr, m., grandson.

Pavitr, adj., holy, pure.

Pāymāl, adj. (Pers. پائمال), trodden under foot; pāymāl karvuñ, 'to tread down.'

Pāyo, m. (Pers. 44), base, foundation;—no pāyo nānkhvo, to found.

Pāytakht, n. (Pers. پائخت), capital city, seat of government.

Pegambar, n. (Pers.), a prophet.

Pehelāñ, postp., before (of time). Pehel-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., first. Pehelvehel-o, -ī, -uñ \ adj., very

Pehelvel-o, -ī, -uñ } first, first of all.

Peśāvar, n., the city of Peshāwar. Pestanjī Edaljī, m., pr. n. of a Pārsī.

Peśvo, m. (Pers. پشورا title of the ruler of the Marāthās, Peshwā. Pet, n., belly, abdomen.

Pīḍ f., pain, anguish, distress, Pīdā trouble.

Pitā, m., father.

Pohonchvuñ, v. intr., to arrive. Pokār, m., exclamation, shout.

Polilor, n., name of a place.

Porto Novo, n., name of a place, Porto Novo.

Potān-o, ·ī, ·uñ (from pote, v. gr.), his own, her own, &c.

Pote, refl. pron., himself, herself, &c.

Prabhū, m., a lord, master.

Prāchīn, adj., ancient, former.

Pradlıān, m., minister, councillor.

Pragat, adj., clear, evident.

Pragațpaņuñ, n., revelation, manifestation.

Prajā, f., progeny, descendants; subjects, a nation.

Prakaran, n., a topic, subject; a section.

Prakāś, m., brightness, lustre, splendour.

Prakhyāt, adj., famous, renowned.

Pramāṇe, postp., according to. Prāṇī, n., living creature, animate being.

Prant, m., a province.

Prasār, m., spread, diffusion; p. karvo, to spread.

Pravās, m., travel, travelling, journeying.

Prithivī, f., the earth.

Prithurāj, m., pr. n. of a man.

Puchhvuñ, v. tr. (with acc.), to ask, enquire, question.

Pür, adj., full, perfect.

Purush, m., a male, a man.

Pūrvādhikārī, m. (pūrva, before; adhikārī, heir, owner), former official, predecessor.

Pūrvuñ, v. tr., to bury, inter.

Pushkal, adj., many.

Pustak, n., a book, a volume.

Puthe, postp., behind, after, in pursuit of.

Putr, m., a son.

R (2).

Rācharchīlnň, n., household furniture.

Radvuñ, v. intr., to weep, cry.

Rahevuñ, v. intr. (v. rehevuñ).

Raiyat, f. (Ar. رُعِيّة), subjects (of king): a peasant.

Rāj, n., a kingdom, a reign; rāj karvuñ, to reign.

Rājā, n., a king.

Rājā Ṭoḍarmal, m., pr. n. of a celebrated Hindū.

Rājbāhādur, m., pr. n. of a Muḥammadau chief.

Rājkārbhār, m., affairs of the kingdom.

Rajpūt, m., a Rajpūt.

Rājsinh, m., pr. n. of a king of Bhevād.

Rājya, n., a kingdom.

Rājyachinh, n., emblem of sovereignty.

Rājyadhānī, f., capital city, royal city.

Rājyaprakaraņ, n., matters connected with a kingdom, politics, system of government.

Rājyasattā, f., royal authority, kingly power.

Rakam, f. (Ar. رُدِّم), allowance, amount, item.

Rakhḍāvavuñ, v. tr., to misguide, lead astray, cause to wander.

Rākhvuñ, v. tr., to keep, retain, preserve; to place, put.

Raļiyāmaņ-o,-ī,-uñ, adj., pleasing, diverting.

Ramazān, m. (Ar. رُمُفان), the Muḥammadan fast-month, Ramadhān.

Rāmsinh, n., pr. n. of a King of Jaipur.

Ran, n., a forest; a desert.

Rāṇī, f., a queen.

Rāņo, m., king (esp. title of a ruler of Udaipur).

Rasto, m., a road, path, way. Rāt, f., night.

Rāṭhoḍ, m., pr. n. of a Rajpūt family (Kings of Kanoj).

Rehevuñ, v. intr. (v. gr.), to remain, stay, continue.

Rehevāsī, m., inhabitant.

Reśamī, adj. (Pers. آبْرِيشَمي) silken.

Rīt } f., manner, way, custom, Rīti } method.

Roj, m. (Pers. j,), a day.

Roj, adv., daily, day by day.

Rokvuñ, v. tr., to hinder, prevent, stop.

Roțī (Urdū, for roțlī), f., bread; rotī khāvī, 'to eat bread,' to have a meal.

Rudhi, f., idiom.

Rūpāļ-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., beautiful.

Rūpiyo, m., a rupee.

Rustamjī Fardunjī, m., pr. n. of a Pārsī.

S and S' (R and R).

Sabaktagīn, m. pr. n. of a king. S'abd, m., a word, a sound. Sābit, adj. (Ar. ثابت), proved, firm. Sābitī, f. (from Ar. ثابت), support, proof, correctness. Sāchāī, f., truth. Sach-o, -ī, uñ, adj., true, truthful. Sād, m. (Ar. Jew), pr. n. of an Arab. Sādhāran, adj., common, general.

Sādhu, m., an ascetic, a (Hindū) saint.

Sādhuśahī, adj. (Guj. sādhu -Pers. : -adj. term. -ī), ascetic. Sadī, f. (Pers. مدى), a century.

Saf, adj. (Ar. الحاف), pure, clean; plain, clear; adv., 'clearly, plainly.

Safāī, f. (Pers. صفأى), purity.

Safaīdār, adj., possessed of purity (of diction).

Sagānvāhālān, n. pl., friends and relatives.

S'agird, m. (Pers. شاگرد), disciple, apprentice.

Saghl-o, -ī, -uñ) adj., all, Sagl-o, -ī, -uñ, S whole.

Sago, m., a kinsman, relative.

Sag-o, -ī, nn, adj., akin, closely related.

S'āhabuddīn, m. (Ar. مَاحبُ الدّين), pr. n. of a man.

S'āh Ālam, m. (Pers. شاء عالم) pr. n. of a Mughul Emperor, Shah 'Alam.

Sahan, n., endurance, patience. S'aheriyar, m. (Pers. شهريار), pr. n. of the fourth son of Jahangir.

Sahit, postp., along with.

Sāhitya, n., materials, means. S'āhjādo,m.(Pers. عا: الله),a prince. S'āhjahāñ, m. (Pers. شاء جهاري), pr. n. of a grandson of Akbar.

Sakhat, adj. (Pers. ----), hard, difficult, severe.

S'akāvuñ, v. (pass. of śakvuñ, q. v.).

Sākshī, m., a witness.

S'akti, f., power, might, ability.

S'akvuñ, v. aux., to be able.

Salām, f. (Ar. سلام), a salutation.

Salīm, m. (Ar. سُليم), pr. n. of Akbar's eldest son.

Samāchār, m. (often used in pl.). tidings, news, a message.

Samajanvāl-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., clever, intelligent.

Samajāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to understand, give to understand.

Samajāvun, v. (pass. of samajvun, g. v.), to be understood.

Samajvun, v. tr., to understand, comprehend.

Samān, postp., in opposition to.

Samāpti, f., end, completion, termination.

Sambandh, m., connexion.

Sambandhī, postp., with regard to. regarding, concerning, about.

Sambhāl, f., care, heed.

Sāmbhalvnn, v. tr., to hear, listen to.

Same, postp., opposite, before, in front, against.

Same, m., time.

Sām-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., opposed, hostile, against.

Samp, m., unanimity, union, league.
Samrāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to adorn, cause to repair.

San, m. (Ar. iii), year (Christian calendar); age, epoch (Chr.).

Sandhe, adv., everywhere.

Sandhĭ, f., union, junction; opportunity.

Sang, postp., together with.

Sang, m., pr. n. of a King of Udaipur.

Sānje = sānjhre, q. v.

Sānjh, f., evening.

Sāñjhre, adv., in the evening.

Sāñkaļ, f., a chain.

Sanmukh, postp., in presence of, before.

Santān, m. and n., progeny, descendants.

S'anti, f., comfort, rest, peace of mind.

Sar, postp.,on, upon, on account of.
Sar, m. (Eng.), Sir; Sar Tomas
Ro = Sir Thomas Roe; Sar
Viliyam Noris = Sir William
Norris.

Saras, adj., excellent, capital. Sarasvatī, f., the river Sarasvatī.

Sardār, m. (Pers. شُردار), chief, a noble.

Sarīpathe, adv., well. S'arīr, n., the body.

Sarkār, f. (Pers. شُرگار), the Government.

Sarkārī, adj. (Pers. سُرُكارى), governmental, government.

Sarkh-o,-ī,-uñ,adj.,like, similar to. Sār-o, -ī, uñ, adj., good, well.

Sarovar, n., a lake.

Sāru, postp., for, because of, on account of.

Sarvaśaktimān, adj., Almighty. Sarve, adj., all.

Sāt, num. adj., seven.

Satā, f., authority (= sattā).

Satārā, n., pr. n. of a town in the Deccan, not far from Poona.

Deccan, not far from Poona.
Satāvavuñ, v. tr., to persecute.

Sathe, postp., with, along with.

Satī, f., the custom of satī (suttee), or self-immolation of widows.

Sātm-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., seventh.

Satrāmī, m., pr. n. of a man.

S'atru, m., an enemy.

Sattā, f., authority, influence.

Sattādār, adj. (sattā — Pers.), powerful, influential.

Sau, adj., all; sau kartūñ, more than all.

Sāvā, (Ar. لاية), name of a lake, the water of which is said to have dried up at Muḥammad's birth.

Sāvachet, adj., aware, attentive, expectant.

Savāl, m. (Ar. سُوال), question, enquiry.

Savār, m. (Pers. شوار), a horseman. Savār, f., morning.

Savāre, adv., in the morning, early. S'eher, n. (Pers. مُثِرُ), a city.

Semenīs, m., pr. name.

Sen, v. sub., so.

Senā, f., an army.

Senāpatī, m., a general.

Sikandar Adil S'āh, m. (Pers. سَكُنْدُر عادِل شاء), pr. n. of a King of Bījāpur.

Sikandar Sur, m., pr. n. of a man. Sikhavavuñ v. tr., to teach, Sikhavavuñ instruct.

 $S'ikhvu\tilde{n}$ v. tr., to learn.

Sindh, m., pr. n., the province of Sindh.

Sindhunadī, f., the river Indus.

Sipāī, m., a sipāhī (sepoy), soldier; polīs sīpāī, a native policeman.

S'īr Afgān, (Pers. شير افغان), Shīr Afghān, pr. n. of a man.

Siriā, m., Syria.

S'ivae, postp. (Pers. صواى), except,

So, num. adj., a hundred; ekso, one hundred. (With higher numbers prefixed this word becomes señ, as baseñ, two hundred).

S'o, śī, śuñ, interr. and adj. pron., what?

S'obhā, f., ornament, heauty.

S'obhāemān, adj., ornamental, ornamented.

Sogand, m. (Pers. سُوَيَّدُ), an oath; s. khāvī, to swear (ek vastuno, by a thing).

S'olingar, n., name of a place.

Somnäth, n., name of a city.

Somvār, m., Monday.

Sonāpur(-por), n., name of a part of Bombay.

Sonuñ, n., gold.

S'rāpit, adj., accursed.

Staneśvar, n., name of a town, 50 miles N. of Pānīpat.

Sthāpnā, f., establishment, founding.

Sthāpnār, m., a founder, establisher.

Sthāpvnñ, v. tr., to establish, found.

Strī, f., a woman.

Sūbo, m. (Pers. سُوبَه), a province; a petty ruler.

S'uddh 3 adj., pure, clean.

Sūdhāro, m., a reform, an improvement.

S'uddhatā, f., purity, cleanness.

Sudhī, postp., until, as far as, up to.

S'uddhpanuñ, n., purity, cleanness.

Sujā, m. (Ar. جاع) pr. n. of a prince.

S'ukan, n., an omen, portent; śukan jonār, a diviner.

Sukāvavnn, v. tr., to dry up. Sukāvun, v. intr., to dry up, wither: sukāī javun, to dry up. Sukh, n., happiness, comfort. Sukhī, adj., happy, comfortable. Sultan, m. (Ar, "Mal"), Sultan, S'un, pron. interr. n., what? (often used as the sign of a question). Sundar, adj., beautiful, fair. Sūro, m., a brave man, a hero. Suvuñ, v. intr., to sleep. Svabhāv, m., nature. Svabhāvik, adj., natural. Svadhin, adj., subject, subjected; s. karvuñ, to render subject. Svapanuñ, n., a dream. Svar, m. (Pers. سوار), a horseman. Svarg, n., the sky, heaven. Svārī, f., an expedition, incursion. Svatantrapan, n. Svatantratā, f. f independence.

T and Th (a and U).

Tābe, adj. (Ar. وَأَبِع), obedient.

Tadbīr, f., plan, device.

Taiyār, adj. (Urdū رُبُّار), ready, prepared.

Taiyārī, adj. (Urdū رُبُّارِي) preparation.

Tājmehel, n., the Tāj Mahal at Agrā.

Tale, postp., under, beneath, below. Talvār, f., the sword.

Tamār-o, -ī, -uñ, poss. pr., your, yours.

Tambu, m., a tent.

Tame, pron., you (v. gr.).

Tandarost, adj. (Pers. تندرست), healthy, well.

Tane, pron., to thee, thee (v. gr.). Tanhān, adv., then.

Tapās, f. (Ar. تُغَصَّر), enquiry, investigation.

Tapāsvuñ, v. tr., to enquire, examine into, inspect.

Taraf, f., direction (Ar. طرف); postp., towards.

Tare, adv., then (v. tyare).

Tare, pron. (form of tuñ, thon), to thee (v. gr.).

Tareh, f. (corr. from Ar. رطری), manner, method.

Tarīk (Ar. تَرِيق), method.

Tār-o, -ī, -uñ, pron., thy, thine.

Tāro, m., a star.

Tart, adv., at once, immediately (also turt).

Tārthī $(t\bar{a}re + th\bar{i})$, from that time. Tātār, m., Tātār (Tartar).

Tathā, conj., and.

To, demonst. m. f. n., that; pron., he, she, it; neut. pl., they (v. gram., Pronouns); tethī, from that, on that account (also tethī karīne, id.).

Tedun, n., invitation; t. karvun, to invite.

Teko, m., a prop, support; teko ~proo, to give support, to uphold, prove.

Telichari, n., name of a place.

Tem, adv., thus; pron. obl., them.

Temaj, adv., thus; conj., just as, as well as.

Teṇī, she: teṇi-no, -nī,-nuñ (v. gr. sub. pron. pers.), her, hers.

Tevan, pron. (Pārsī-Guj.), he.

Tev-o, -ī, -un (correl. to jevo, q. v.), as, such as.

Thāṇeśvar, n., pr. n. of town, Thāneśvar.

Thavuñ, v. intr. aux. (v. gr.), to become.

Thī, postp., from, by, through.

Thod-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., few, a few.

Tīkh-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., hot, quick-tempered; pungent.

Tikshnabuddhī, f., keenness of intellect, sharpness, cleverness.

Tiraskār, m., contempt, aversion. To, particle, then (done), correl. to

Todvuň, v. tr., to break, fracture; todī pādvuň.

Tohomat, f. (Ar. تُحْقُ), accusation, false charge.

Topan, conj., nevertheless, yet.

Tran, num. adj., three.

jo, if.

Trīj-o, -ī, uñ, adj., third.

Trimbak Rāy, m., pr. n. of a Marāthā.

Trinomālī, n., name of a place.

Tuvār, m., pr. n. of Rajpūt family (Kings of Delhi).

Tun, pron., thou.

Turkastān, n., Turkistan.

Turkī, adj., Turkish.

Turt, adv., at once, immediately.

Turtvelā, adv. (Pārsī), immediately, at once.

Tyan, adv., those.

Tyare, adv., then (v. tare).

Tyārbād, adv. (tyār and Ar. بعد), afterwards.

T and Th (2 and 3).

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Tak\bar{a}v \\ Tak\bar{a}vo \end{array} \right\} m., \, stability, \, durability.$

Tanțio, m., the leg.

Thagāī, f., defrauding, cheating, robbery.

Thāṇo, m., Tanna, a place not far from Bombay.

Tharav, m., decision, resolve.

Tharāvavuñ, v. tr., to decide, fix, settle, appoint.

Theravavuñ, v. tr., to fix, resolve. appoint.

Ţoḍarmal, m., pr. n. Rājā Ţoḍarmal; a celebrated Hindū of Akbar's time.

U (Ŭ & Ū) (& & A).

Ubh-o, -ī, -un, adj., standing upright; ubho thavo, to stand up.

Uchār, m., pronunciation.
Udepur, n., pr. n. of city, Udaipur

(Oodeypore).

Udyañsing, m., pr. n. of a prince. Ujās, m., light, splendour, lustre. Ujjen, n., city of Ujjain.

Ulatpālat adj., across; subs. f., Ulatpūlat revolution; āropīe sākshīne ulat pālat tapāsvānī nā

pādī, the accused refused to cross-examine the witness.

Ult-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., reverse, contrary, opposite.

Umar, f. (Ar. عمر), age.

Umarāv, m. (Ar. أمراء, pl. of أمير), a noble.

Unch-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., high, lofty, noble.

Und-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., deep.

Unt, m., a male camel.

Upaj, f., profits, produce, nett gain.

Upadeś, m., teaching, doctrine.

Upar, postp., over, upon.

Upāy, m., resource, remedy.

Upayog, m., use; -- no upayog karvo, to use.

Upl-o, -ī, -uñ, adj., above, abovementioned.

Urāvavuñ, v. tr., to cause to fly; to waste, drive away, repel.

Utarvuñ, v. intr., to descend, come down.

Uthvuñ, v. intr., to arise, rise, stand up.

Utpann, adj. (Sk. past part.), created; utpann karvun, to oreate.

Uttam, adj., very good, best.

Uttar, adj., northern; subs. m., the north.

Uttar, m., answer; uttar devo, to answer.

Uttejan, n., excitement, encouragement; u. apvun, to encourage.

V (9).

Vachan, n., word, saying.

Vachche, postp., between.

Vadhu, adj., more, greater, further; vadhu tapās multavī rahī hatī, the further hearing of the case was postponed.

Vadhāre, adj. and adv., more.

Vadhārvuñ, v. tr., to add, increase.

Vadhelo, m., pr. n. of Rajpūt family (kings of Gujarāt).

Vadhvuñ, v. intr., to increase, advance.

Vadhvuñ, v. tr., to fight, quarrel.
Vad-o, -i, uñ, adj., great, elderly, eldest.

Vaduñ karvun, to extinguish; vaduñ thavuñ, to go out, depart.

Vagar, postp., without, except; vagarbhanelo, untaught.

Vagere (corr. from Ar.-Pers.

Vahāḍyā, nī galī, name of a lane in Bombay.

Vāheb, m., pr. n. of an Arab (Wāhib راهب).

Vaihindgadh, n., pr. n. town and fort of Vaihindgarh.

Vājabī, adj. (Ar. رَاجِب), necessary, proper, suitable.

Vajīr, m. (Ar. وَزِير), a Wazīr, minister of state.

Vakht, m. (Ar. وُقْت), time.

Valagvuñ, v. tr., to embrace; to possess (of a devil).

Valan, f., a turn, bend; v. levi, to turn (intr.).

Vaļī, adv., again; further, moreover.

Vallabhasen, m., pr. n., Crown Prince of Chāmund.

Valvuñ, v. intr., to be profited, be gained, result.

Vāļvuň, v. tr., to bend, fold, dress.
Vaňchāvuň, v. (pass. of vāñchvuň,
q. v.), to be read.

Vanchvun, v. tr., to read.

Vāṇī, f., a voice.

Vañś, m., lineage, family, pedigree.

Vañsavalī, f., genealogy, family line, line of descent, genealogical tree.

Var, f., period of time.

Varakā, m., pr. n. (Ar. قررق), Waraqah.

Varas, n., a year (v. varsh).

Vāras, m. (Ar. وَأَرِثُ an heir.

Varaso, m., inheritance, heritage (corr. from Ar. وارث, heir, ورث, heritage).

Vārevār, adv., from time to time, continually.

Varsh, n., a year (v. varas); raining.

Vas, adj., subdued; v. karvuñ, to subdue.

Vasnāro, m., a dweller, inhabitant (f. vasvuñ).

Vastī, f., abode; population.

Vastu, f., a thing.

Vasvuñ, v. intr., to dwell.

Vasūl, f., revenue; (Ar. وصول), vasūl karvuñ, to collect revenue.

Vāt, f., word, matter; story, tale; conversation.

Vay, f., age, period of life.

Vayākaran, n., grammar.

Vazīr,m. (Ar. وزير), a Wazīr (Vizier).

Vechvun, v. tr., to sell.

Vehem, n. (Ar. روم), imagination. Vehemī, aāj., imaginative, imaginary.

Vehevuñ, v. intr., to flow.

Veļā, f., time.

Ver, n., enmity, revenge; v. levuñ, to take vengeance.

Verī, m., an enemy.

Vero, m., tax, impost, taxation.

Vepār, m., trading, commerce; vepārdhandho, m., commercial business. Vesh, m., appearance, aspect, garb. Vichār, m., thought, reflection, consideration.

Vichārvuñ, v. tr., to think, reflect, consider, fancy.

Vidhvā, f., a widow.

Vidyā, f., knowledge, learning.

Vijayrāy, m., pr. n., Vijaypāy, name of a king.

Vikhyāt, adj., renowned, famous. Vinā, postp., without (sine).

Vīś, num. adj., twenty.

Vise postp., concerning, re-Vishe garding.

Vikhervun v. tr., to scatter, Vinkhervun disperse.

Viśvās, m., belief, faith; viśvās lāvo, karvo, to believe (-par).

Y (괵).

Yad, f., memory, recollection; tene yad ave chhe, it occurs to his memory; tene yad rehe chhe, he remembers (Pers. 4).

Yāddāst, f (Per. يادداشت), memory, power of recollection.

Yādgārī, f. (Pers. يادگاري), memorial Yogya, adj., worthy (of = ne).

Yojnā, f., plan, arrangement.

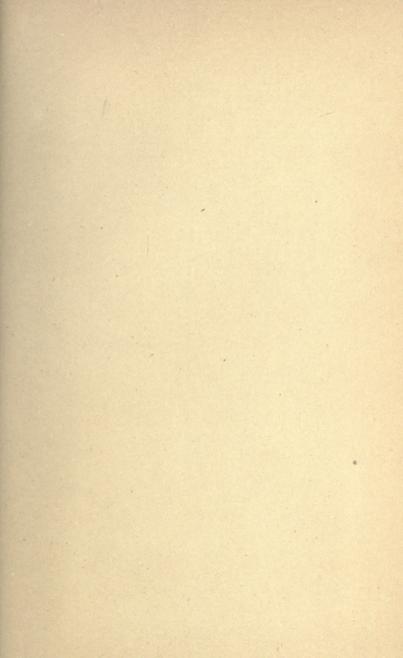
Yojvuñ, v. tr., to plan, arrange, devise.

Yukti, f., plan, trick, device.

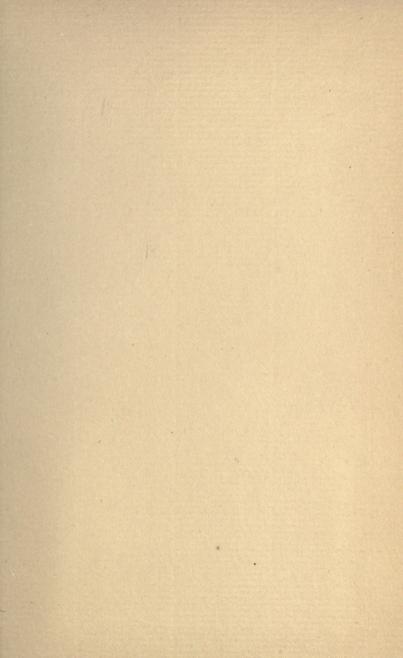
Z (33).

Zaid, m. (Ar. زُیْدُ), Zaid, Muḥammad's adopted son.









University of California SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY 405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388 Return this material to the library from which it was borrowed.





ia Univer Sou Lib